

**UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**
Washington, D.C. 20549

Form S-3

**REGISTRATION STATEMENT
UNDER THE
SECURITIES ACT OF 1933**

EVOLUTION PETROLEUM CORPORATION

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Nevada
(State or other jurisdiction of
incorporation or organization)

41-1781991
(IRS Employer
Identification No.)

Robert S. Herlin
President and Chief Executive Officer
Evolution Petroleum Corporation
2500 City West Blvd., Suite 1300
Houston, Texas 77042
(713) 935-0122

(Name and address, including zip code, and telephone
number, including area code, of agent for service)

Evolution Petroleum Corporation
2500 City West Blvd., Suite 1300
Houston, Texas 77042
(713) 935-0122

(Address, including zip code, and telephone number,
including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

copy to:

Michael T. Larkin, Esq.
Adams and Reese LLP
One Houston Center
1221 McKinney, Suite 4400
Houston, Texas 77010
(713) 652-5151

Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale of securities to the public: From time to time after the effective date of this registration statement.

If the only securities being registered on this form are being offered pursuant to dividend or interest reinvestment plans, please check the following box.

If any of the securities being registered on this form are being offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, other than securities offered only in connection with dividend or interest reinvestment plans, please check the following box.

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, please check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462 (c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a registration statement pursuant to General Instruction I.D. or a post-effective amendment thereto that shall become effective upon filing with the Commission pursuant to Rule 462(e) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment to a registration statement filed pursuant to General Instruction I.D. filed to register additional securities or additional classes of securities pursuant to Rule 413(b) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer" and "smaller reporting company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act. (Check one):

Large accelerated filer

Accelerated filer

Non-accelerated filer

Smaller reporting company

CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE

**Title of each class of
securities to be registered**

**Amount to be
registered /proposed
maximum offering**

**Amount of
registration fee**

| | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------|-------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| Common Stock(3) | | | | |
| Preferred Stock(2) | | | | |
| Securities Warrants(2) | | | | |
| Debt Securities(2) | | | | |
| Total | \$ | 50,000,000 | \$ | 3,565(4) |

- (1) There are being registered an indeterminate principal amount or number of common stock, preferred stock, securities warrants and debt securities as shall have an aggregate initial offering price of the securities issued or sold under this Registration Statement not to exceed \$50,000,000. Separate consideration may or may not be received for securities that are being registered that are issued in exchange for, or upon conversion or exercise of, the preferred stock, securities warrants or debt securities being registered hereunder.
- (2) Subject to footnote (1), this registration statement also covers an indeterminate amount of Common Stock, Preferred Stock and/or Debt Securities that may be issued in exchange for, or upon conversion or exercise of, the preferred stock, securities warrants or debt securities being registered. Any securities being registered may be sold separately or as units with other securities being registered.
- (3) Includes preferred share purchase rights. Until the occurrence of certain prescribed events, none of which has occurred, the preferred share purchase rights are not exercisable, are evidenced by certificates representing shares of the common stock, and will be transferred only with shares of the common stock. The value, if any, attributable to the rights is included in the market price of the common stock.
- (4) Calculated in accordance with Rule 457(o).

The registrant hereby amends this registration statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this registration statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or until this registration statement shall become effective on such date as the Securities and Exchange Commission, acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.

[Table of Contents](#)

The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. We may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and it is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any state where the offer or sale is not permitted.

PROSPECTUS

Subject to completion, dated July 14, 2010

EVOLUTION PETROLEUM CORPORATION

**\$50,000,000
Common Stock
Preferred Stock
Warrants
Debt Securities**

We may offer and sell, from time to time in one or more offerings, up to \$50,000,000 in the aggregate of common stock, preferred stock, or warrants to purchase our common stock or preferred stock, or debt securities (which may or may not be guaranteed by one or more of our subsidiaries), at prices and on terms that we will determine at the time of the offering. Preferred stock and debt securities may be convertible into preferred stock, common stock, or debt securities.

Each time we sell securities, to the extent required by applicable law, we will provide a supplement to this prospectus that contains specific information about the offering and the terms of the securities being offered. The supplement may also add, update or change information contained in this prospectus. **You should carefully read this prospectus, all prospectus supplements and all other documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus before you invest in our securities.**

We will offer the securities in amounts, at prices and on terms to be determined by market conditions at the time of the offerings. The securities may be offered separately or together in any combination.

We may offer the securities directly or through underwriters, agents or dealers. The supplements to this prospectus will designate the terms of our plan of distribution. See the discussion under the heading "Plan of Distribution" for more information on the topic.

Our executive offices are located at 2500 City West Blvd., Suite 1300, Houston, Texas 77042, and our telephone number is (713) 935-0122. Our common stock trades on the NYSE Amex under the symbol "EPM." On July 13, 2010, the closing price for our common stock, as reported on the NYSE Amex, was \$5.14 per share.

Investing in our securities involves risk. Please see "Risk Factors" beginning on page 1 for a discussion of certain risks that you should consider before investing in our securities.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

[Table of Contents](#)

Table of Contents

| | |
|---|----|
| ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS | 1 |
| ABOUT EVOLUTION PETROLEUM CORPORATION | 1 |
| RISK FACTORS | 1 |
| CAUTIONARY STATEMENTS REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS | 1 |
| THE COMPANY | 2 |
| RATIO OF EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES AND EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES PLUS PREFERRED STOCK DIVIDENDS | 3 |
| USE OF PROCEEDS | 3 |
| DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK | 3 |
| DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS | 4 |
| DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES | 5 |
| DETERMINATION OF OFFERING PRICE | 13 |
| PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION | 13 |
| LEGAL MATTERS | 14 |
| EXPERTS | 14 |
| WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION | 14 |
| INFORMATION INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE | 14 |

[Table of Contents](#)

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

This prospectus is part of a registration statement that we have filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission using a “shelf” registration process. Using this process, we may sell any combination of the securities described in this prospectus in one or more offerings up to a total dollar amount of \$50,000,000.

Each time we use this prospectus to offer securities, we will provide a prospectus supplement that will describe the specific terms of the offering. The prospectus supplement may also add to or update other information contained in this prospectus.

In making your investment decision, you should rely only on the information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus and any prospectus supplement we may authorize to be delivered to you. This prospectus incorporates important business and financial information about us that is not included in or delivered with this prospectus. You may obtain a copy of this information, without charge, as described in the “Where You Can Find More Information” section. We have not authorized anyone to provide you with any other information. If you receive any other information, you should not rely on it.

You should not assume that the information appearing in this prospectus is accurate as of any date other than the date on the front cover of this prospectus. You should not assume that the information contained in the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus is accurate as of any date other than the respective dates of those documents. Our business, financial condition, results of operations, reserves and prospects may have changed since that date.

We encourage you to read this entire prospectus together with the documents incorporated by reference into this prospectus before making a decision whether to invest in our securities.

ABOUT EVOLUTION PETROLEUM CORPORATION

In this prospectus, “Evolution,” “we,” “our,” and “us” refer to Evolution Petroleum Corporation

We are a petroleum company engaged primarily in the acquisition, exploitation and development of properties for the production of crude oil and natural gas. We acquire known, underdeveloped oil and natural gas resources and exploit them through the application of capital and technology to increase production, ultimate recoveries, or both.

We are a Nevada corporation. Our principal executive offices are located at 2500 City West Blvd., Suite 1300, Houston, Texas 77042. Our telephone number is (713) 935-0122. We maintain a Web site at www.evolutionpetroleum.com, which contains information about us. Our Web site and the information contained on it and connected to it will not be deemed incorporated by reference into this prospectus. Our common stock is listed on the NYSE Amex under the symbol “EPM.”

RISK FACTORS

An investment in our securities involves a high degree of risk. You should carefully consider the factors contained in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended June 30, 2009 under the heading “Risk Factors” and updated, if applicable, in our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q before investing in our securities. You should also consider similar information contained in any Annual Report on Form 10-K, Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q or other document filed by us with the SEC after the date of this prospectus before deciding to invest in our securities. If any of these risks were to occur, our business, financial condition or results of operations could be adversely affected. In that case, the trading price of our common stock or other securities could decline

and you could lose all or part of your investment. When we offer and sell any securities pursuant to a prospectus supplement, we may include additional risk factors relevant to such securities in the prospectus supplement.

CAUTIONARY STATEMENTS REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

Certain information included in this prospectus may be deemed to be forward-looking statements. Where any forward-looking statement includes a statement of the assumptions or bases underlying the forward-looking statement, we caution that, while we believe these assumptions or bases to be reasonable and made in good faith, assumed facts or bases almost always vary from the actual results, and the differences between assumed facts or bases and actual results can be material, depending upon the circumstances. Where, in any forward-looking statement, we or our management express an expectation or belief as to future results, such expectation or belief is expressed in good faith and is believed to have a reasonable basis. We cannot assure you, however, that the statement of expectation or belief will result or be achieved or accomplished. These statements relate to analyses and other information which are based on forecasts of future results and estimates of amounts not yet determinable. These statements also relate to our future prospects, developments and business strategies. These forward-looking statements are identified by their use of terms and phrases such as “anticipate,” “believe,” “could,” “estimate,” “expect,” “intend,” “may,” “plan,” “predict,” “project,” “will,” and similar terms and phrases, including references to assumptions. These statements are contained in the section “Risk Factors” and other sections of this prospectus. These forward looking statements involve risks and uncertainties that may cause our actual future activities and results of operations to be materially different from those suggested or described in this prospectus. These risks include the risks that are identified in the “Risk Factors” section of this prospectus, and also include, among others, expectations regarding the following:

- amount, nature and timing of capital expenditures;

[Table of Contents](#)

- drilling of wells and other planned exploitation activities;
- timing and amount of future production of oil and natural gas;
- increases in production growth and proved reserves;
- operating costs such as lease operating expenses, administrative costs and other expenses;
- our future operating or financial results;
- cash flow and anticipated liquidity;
- our business strategy and the availability of acquisition opportunities;
- hedging strategy;
- exploration and exploitation activities and property acquisitions;
- marketing of oil and natural gas;
- governmental and environmental regulation of the oil and gas industry;
- environmental liabilities relating to potential pollution arising from our operations;
- our level of indebtedness;
- timing and amount of future dividends;
- industry competition, conditions, performance and consolidation;
- natural events such as severe weather, hurricanes, floods, fire and earthquakes; and
- uncertainties and difficulties associated with the integration and operation of recently acquired properties.

We undertake no obligation to publicly update or revise any forward-looking statements, whether as a result of new information or otherwise. If one or more of these risks or uncertainties materialize, or if underlying assumptions prove incorrect, our actual results may vary materially from those expected, estimated or projected.

THE COMPANY

We are a petroleum company engaged primarily in the acquisition, exploitation and development of properties for the production of crude oil and natural gas. We acquire known, underdeveloped oil and natural gas resources and exploit them through the application of capital and technology to increase production, ultimate recoveries, or both.

Within this overall strategy, our initiatives include:

- I Enhanced oil recovery (“EOR”), using miscible and immiscible gas flooding;
- II Conventional redevelopment of bypassed primary resources within mature oil and natural gas fields utilizing modern technology and our expertise; and

Our most significant asset is our EOR project in the 13,636 acre Delhi Field, located in northeast Louisiana. Our interests consist of 7.4% in overriding and mineral royalty interests, a 25% after pay-out reversionary working interest (20% revenue interest) in the Delhi Field Holt Bryant Unit, and a 25% working interest (20% revenue interest) in certain other depths in the Delhi Field, resulting from the Farmout we completed on June 12, 2006, with Denbury Onshore LLC, a subsidiary of Denbury Resources Inc. (the "Operator") (the "Delhi Farmout"). The Holt Bryant Unit in the Delhi Field is currently being redeveloped by the Operator, using CO₂ enhanced oil recovery technology and a dedicated portion of the Operator's proved CO₂ reserves in the Jackson Dome, located approximately 100 miles east of Delhi. Following several years of development by the Operator, CO₂ injection had begun in the Holt Bryant Unit in the Delhi Field in November 2009, followed by initial oil production in March 2010.

Since our closing of the Delhi Farmout, we have focused on developing projects in our other initiatives through conventional redevelopment of oil and rich gas in the Giddings Field using horizontal drilling, development of gas resources in the shallow portion of the Woodford and Caney Shale Trend in Eastern Oklahoma, development of potential oil reserves in the mature Lopez Field within our Neptune oil project in South Texas and development of our proprietary artificial lift technology intended to extend the life of horizontal wells with oil or associated water production.

Our long-term strategy and primary focus continue to be on increasing share value through the identification and acquisition of

[Table of Contents](#)

resources and conversion of those resources into proved reserves through our expertise and technology.

RATIOS OF EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES AND TO COMBINED FIXED CHARGES AND PREFERRED STOCK DIVIDENDS

Our ratios of earnings to fixed charges and our ratios of earnings to combined fixed charges and tax-adjusted preferred stock dividends were as follows for the periods indicated in the table below. See Exhibit 12 for explanation of the calculations and key terms.

| (Dollar amounts in thousands) | Nine Months Ended March 31, 2010 | Year ended June 30, | | | | |
|--|----------------------------------|---------------------|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| | | 2009 | 2008 | 2007 | 2006 | 2005 |
| Earnings (loss) from continuing operations, pre-tax and before fixed charges | \$ (2,884) | \$ (3,618) | \$ (2,656) | \$ (2,449) | \$ 40,706 | \$ (2165) |
| Fixed Charges | \$ 38 | \$ 50 | \$ 47 | \$ 27 | \$ 2,615 | \$ 402 |
| Tax-adjusted Preferred Stock Dividends | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — |
| Ratio of Earnings to Fixed Charges | | | | | 17 | |
| Fixed charges coverage deficiency | \$ 38 | \$ 50 | \$ 47 | \$ 27 | | \$ 402 |
| Ratio of Earnings to Combined Fixed Charges and Tax-adjusted Preferred Stock Dividends | | | | | 17 | |
| Combined coverage deficiency | \$ 38 | \$ 50 | \$ 47 | \$ 27 | | \$ 402 |

* In all periods, except for the year ended June 30, 2006, earnings were insufficient to cover fixed charges, and therefore no ratios are shown.

USE OF PROCEEDS

Unless otherwise specified in a prospectus supplement accompanying this prospectus, we expect to use the net proceeds from the sale of our securities for general corporate purposes, which may include, among other things, the financing of capital expenditures, acquisitions and additions to our working capital. The actual application of proceeds from the sale of any particular tranche of securities issued hereunder will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to such tranche of securities.

DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK

Our authorized capital consists of 105,000,000 shares of stock \$.001 par value per share. Of the authorized capital, 100,000,000 shares are authorized to be issued as common stock and 5,000,000 shares remain authorized and undesignated to be issued as preferred stock. Our issued and outstanding shares of common stock as of July 13, 2010 consisted of 27,064,036 shares which were held by 2374 stockholders of record. To date, there are no issued and outstanding shares of preferred stock. The following is a description of our common and preferred stock.

The following description of our capital stock summarizes general terms and provisions that apply to our capital stock. Since this is only a summary, it does not contain all of the information that may be important to you. The summary is subject to and qualified in its entirety by reference to our articles of incorporation and our bylaws, which are filed as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part and incorporated by reference into this prospectus. See "Where You Can Find More Information."

Common Stock

For all matters submitted to a vote of stockholders, holders of common stock are entitled to one vote for each share registered in his or her name on our books, and they do not have cumulative voting rights. Each share of the common stock is entitled to share equally with each other share of common stock in dividends from sources legally available therefore, when, as, and if declared by the board of directors and, upon our liquidation or dissolution, whether voluntary or involuntary, to share equally in the assets that are available for distribution to the holders of the common stock. We have not paid any cash

[Table of Contents](#)

Our common stock is listed and traded on the NYSE Amex under symbol “EPM”.

Preferred Stock

If we offer preferred stock, we will file the terms of the preferred stock with the SEC, and the prospectus supplement relating to that offering will include a description of the specific terms of the offering, including the following specific terms:

- the series, the number of shares offered and the liquidation value of the preferred stock;
- the price at which the preferred stock will be issued;
- the dividend rate, the dates on which the dividends will be payable and other terms relating to the payment of dividends on the preferred stock;
- the liquidation preference of the preferred stock;
- the voting rights of the preferred stock;
- whether the preferred stock is redeemable or subject to a sinking fund, and the terms of any such redemption or sinking fund;
- whether the preferred stock is convertible or exchangeable for any other securities, and the terms of any such conversion; and
- any additional rights, preferences, qualifications, limitations and restrictions of the preferred stock.

If we offer to sell preferred stock, our board of directors is authorized to designate and issue shares of preferred stock in one or more series without stockholder approval. Our board of directors would have discretion to determine the rights, preferences, privileges and restrictions, including voting rights, dividend rights, conversion rights, redemption privileges and liquidation preferences, of each series of preferred stock.

It is not possible to state the actual effect of the issuance of any shares of preferred stock upon the rights of holders of our common stock until the board of directors determines the specific rights of the holders of the preferred stock. However, these effects might include:

- restricting dividends on the common stock;
- diluting the voting power of the common stock;
- impairing the liquidation rights of the common stock; and
- delaying or preventing a change in control of our company.

Anti-Takeover Provisions Under Nevada Law.

We are subject to the “Combinations With Interested Stockholders Statute” and the “Control Share Acquisition Statute” of the Nevada Revised Statutes. The Combinations Statute provides that specified persons who, together with affiliates and associates, own, or within three years did own, 10% or more of the outstanding voting stock of a corporation cannot engage in specified business combinations with the corporation for a period of three years after the date on which the person became an interested stockholder, unless the combination or the transaction by which the person first became an interested stockholder is approved by the corporation’s board of directors before the person first became an interested stockholder.

The Control Share Acquisition Statute provides that persons who acquire a “controlling interest” as defined by the statute, in a company may only be given full voting rights in their shares if such rights are conferred by the stockholders of the company at an annual or special meeting. As such, persons acquiring a controlling interest may not be able to vote their shares at such meeting. However, any stockholder that does not vote in favor of granting such voting rights is entitled to demand that the company pay fair value for their shares if the acquiring person has acquired at least a majority of all of the voting power of the company.

Transfer Agent or Registrar

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company is the transfer agent and registrar of our common stock.

DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS

We may issue warrants for the purchase of common stock or preferred stock. Warrants may be issued independently or together with common stock or preferred stock offered by any prospectus supplement and may be attached to or separate from any such offered securities. Series of warrants may be issued under a separate warrant agreement entered into between us and a bank or trust company, as warrant agent, all as will be set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to the particular issue of warrants. The warrant agent

would act solely as our agent in connection with the warrants and would not assume any obligation or relationship of agency or trust for or with any holders of warrants or beneficial owners of warrants.

The following summary of certain provisions of the warrants does not purport to be complete and is subject to, and is qualified in its entirety by reference to, all provisions of the warrant agreements.

Reference is made to the prospectus supplement relating to the particular issue of warrants offered pursuant to such prospectus supplement for the terms of and information relating to such warrants, including, where applicable:

- the number of shares of common stock purchasable upon the exercise of warrants to purchase common stock and the price at which such number of shares of common stock may be purchased upon such exercise;
- the designation and number of units of other securities purchasable upon the exercise of warrants to purchase other securities and the price at which such number of units of such other securities may be purchased upon such exercise;
- the date on which the right to exercise such warrants shall commence and the date on which such right shall expire;
- United States federal income tax consequences applicable to such warrants;
- the amount of warrants outstanding as of the most recent practicable date; and
- any other terms of such warrants.

Warrants will be issued in registered form only. The exercise price for warrants will be subject to adjustment in accordance with the applicable prospectus supplement.

Each warrant will entitle the holder thereof to purchase such number of shares of common stock or preferred stock at such exercise price as shall in each case be set forth in, or calculable from, the prospectus supplement relating to the warrants, which exercise price may be subject to adjustment upon the occurrence of certain events as set forth in such prospectus supplement. After the close of business on the expiration date, or such later date to which such expiration date may be extended by us, unexercised warrants will become void. The place or places where, and the manner in which, warrants may be exercised shall be specified in the prospectus supplement relating to such warrants.

Prior to the exercise of any warrants to purchase common stock or preferred stock, holders of such warrants will not have any of the rights of holders of common stock or preferred stock, as the case may be, purchasable upon such exercise, including the right to receive payments of dividends, if any, on the common stock purchasable upon such exercise, or to exercise any applicable right to vote.

DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES

This section describes the general terms of debt securities to which any prospectus supplement may relate. A prospectus supplement will describe the terms relating to any debt securities to be offered in greater detail, and may provide information that is different from this prospectus. If the information in the prospectus supplement differs with respect to the particular debt securities being offered from this prospectus, you should rely on the information in the prospectus supplement. The debt securities may be issued from time to time in one or more series. The particular terms of each series that are offered by a prospectus supplement will be described in the prospectus supplement.

We may conduct a portion of our operations through subsidiaries. Unless the debt securities are guaranteed by our subsidiaries as described below, the rights of our company and our creditors, including holders of the debt securities, to participate in the assets of any subsidiary upon the latter's liquidation or reorganization will be subject to the prior claims of the subsidiary's creditors, except to the extent that we may ourselves be a creditor with recognized claims against such subsidiary.

The debt securities will be either our senior debt securities or our subordinated debt securities. The senior debt securities and the subordinated debt securities will be issued under separate indentures among us, and any domestic subsidiaries that become guarantors of the debt securities (and are added as co-registrants to the registration statement of which this prospectus supplement forms a part), and a trustee that meets certain requirements and is selected by us (the "Trustee"). Senior debt securities will be issued under a "Senior Indenture" and subordinated debt securities will be issued under a "Subordinated Indenture." Together, the Senior Indenture and the Subordinated Indenture are called "Indentures."

We have summarized selected provisions of the Indentures below. The summary is not complete and is qualified in its entirety by express reference to the provisions of the Indentures. The form of each Indenture has been filed with the SEC as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, and you should read the Indentures for provisions that may be important to you. In the summary below, we have included references to article or section numbers of the applicable Indenture so that you can easily locate these provisions. Whenever we refer in this prospectus or in the prospectus supplement to particular article or sections or defined terms of the Indentures, those article or sections or defined terms are incorporated by reference herein or therein, as applicable. The Indentures will be subject to and governed by certain provisions of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, and we refer you to the Indentures and the Trust Indenture Act for a statement of such provisions. Capitalized terms used in the summary have the

[Table of Contents](#)

meanings specified in the Indentures.

General

We may offer debt securities under this prospectus. The Indentures do not limit the aggregate amount of debt securities, and we may issue debt securities up to the aggregate principal amount which may be authorized from time to time by the board of directors. The Indentures provide that debt securities in separate series may be issued thereunder from time to time without limitation as to aggregate principal amount. We may specify a maximum

aggregate principal amount for the debt securities of any series (Section 301). We will determine the terms and conditions of the debt securities, including the maturity, principal and interest, but those terms must be consistent with the Indenture. The debt securities will be our unsecured obligations.

The subordinated debt securities will be subordinated in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all of our Senior Debt (as defined) as described under “—Subordination of Subordinated Debt Securities” and in the prospectus supplement applicable to any subordinated debt securities. If the prospectus supplement so indicates, the debt securities will be convertible into our common stock (Section 301).

The applicable prospectus supplement will set forth the price or prices at which the debt securities to be offered will be issued and will describe the following terms of such debt securities:

- (1) the designation, aggregate principal amount and authorized denominations of the debt securities;
- (2) whether the debt securities are senior debt securities or subordinated debt securities and, if subordinated debt securities, the related subordination terms;
- (3) any limit on the aggregate principal amount of the debt securities;
- (4) the dates on which the principal of the debt securities will be payable;
- (5) the interest rate that the debt securities will bear and the interest payment dates for the debt securities;
- (6) the places where payments on the debt securities will be payable;
- (7) any terms upon which the debt securities may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at our option;
- (8) any sinking fund or other provisions that would obligate us to repurchase or otherwise redeem the debt securities;
- (9) the portion of the principal amount, if less than all, of the debt securities that will be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the Maturity of the debt securities;
- (10) whether the debt securities are defeasible;
- (11) any addition to or change in the Events of Default;
- (12) whether the debt securities are convertible into our common stock and, if so, the terms and conditions upon which conversion will be effected, including the initial conversion price or conversion rate and any adjustments thereto and the conversion period;
- (13) any addition to or change in the covenants in the Indenture applicable to the debt securities; and
- (14) any other terms of the debt securities not inconsistent with the provisions of the Indenture (Section 301).

Debt securities, including Original Issue Discount Securities, may be sold at a substantial discount below their principal amount. Special United States federal income tax considerations applicable to debt securities sold at an original issue discount may be described in the applicable prospectus supplement. In addition, special United States federal income tax or other considerations applicable to any debt securities that are denominated in a currency or currency unit other than United States dollars may be described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Senior Debt Securities

The senior debt securities will be our direct-unsecured obligations and will constitute senior indebtedness (in each case as defined in the applicable Supplemental Indenture) ranking on a parity with all of our other unsecured and unsubordinated indebtedness.

Subordination of Subordinated Debt Securities

The indebtedness evidenced by the subordinated debt securities will, to the extent set forth in the Subordinated Indenture with respect to each series of subordinated debt securities, be subordinate in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all of our Senior Debt, including the senior debt securities, and it may also be senior in right of payment to all of our Subordinated Debt (Article Twelve of the Subordinated Indenture). The prospectus supplement relating to any subordinated debt securities will summarize the

[Table of Contents](#)

subordination provisions of the Subordinated Indenture applicable to that series including:

- the applicability and effect of such provisions upon any payment or distribution respecting that series following any liquidation, dissolution or other winding-up, or any assignment for the benefit of creditors or other marshaling of assets or any bankruptcy, insolvency or similar proceedings;
- the applicability and effect of such provisions in the event of specified defaults with respect to any Senior Debt, including the circumstances under which and the periods in which we will be prohibited from making payments on the subordinated debt securities; and
- the definition of Senior Debt applicable to the subordinated debt securities of that series and, if the series is issued on a senior subordinated basis, the definition of Subordinated Debt applicable to that series.

The prospectus supplement will also describe as of a recent date the approximate amount of Senior Debt to which the subordinated debt securities of that series will be subordinated.

The failure to make any payment on any of the subordinated debt securities by reason of the subordination provisions of the Subordinated Indenture described in the prospectus supplement will not be construed as preventing the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the subordinated debt securities arising from any such failure to make payment.

The subordination provisions described above will not be applicable to payments in respect of the subordinated debt securities from a defeasance trust established in connection with any legal defeasance or covenant defeasance of the subordinated debt securities as described under “—Legal Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance.”

Form, Exchange and Transfer

The debt securities of each series will be issuable only in fully registered form, without coupons, and, unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, only in denominations of \$1,000 and integral multiples thereof (Section 302).

At the option of the Holder, subject to the terms of the applicable Indenture and the limitations applicable to Global Securities, debt securities of each series will be exchangeable for other debt securities of the same series of any authorized denomination and of a like tenor and aggregate principal amount (Section 305).

Subject to the terms of the applicable Indenture and the limitations applicable to Global Securities, debt securities may be presented for exchange as provided above or for registration of transfer (duly endorsed or with the form of transfer endorsed thereon duly executed) at the office of the Security Registrar or at the office of any transfer agent designated by us for such purpose. No service charge will be made for any registration of transfer or exchange of debt securities, but we may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge payable in that connection. Such transfer or exchange will be effected upon the Security Registrar or such transfer agent, as the case may be, being satisfied with the documents of title and identity of the person making the request. The Security Registrar and any other transfer agent initially designated by us for any debt securities will be named in the applicable prospectus supplement (Section 305). We may at any time designate additional transfer agents or rescind the designation of any transfer agent or approve a change in the office through which any transfer agent acts, except that we will be required to maintain a transfer agent in each Place of Payment for the debt securities of each series (Section 1002).

If the debt securities of any series (or of any series and specified tenor) are to be redeemed in part, we will not be required to (1) issue, register the transfer of or exchange any debt security of that series (or of that series and specified tenor, as the case may be) during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of mailing of a notice of redemption of any such debt security that may be selected for redemption and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing or (2) register the transfer of or exchange any debt security so selected for redemption, in whole or in part, except the unredeemed portion of any such debt security being redeemed in part (Section 305).

Global Securities

Some or all of the debt securities of any series may be represented, in whole or in part, by one or more Global Securities that will have an aggregate principal amount equal to that of the debt securities they represent. Each Global Security will be registered in the name of a Depository or its nominee identified in the applicable prospectus supplement, will be deposited with such Depository or nominee or its custodian and will bear a legend regarding the restrictions on exchanges and registration of transfer thereof referred to below and any such other matters as may be provided for pursuant to the applicable Indenture.

Notwithstanding any provision of the Indentures or any debt security described in this prospectus, no Global Security may be exchanged in whole or in part for debt securities registered, and no transfer of a Global Security in whole or in part may be registered, in the name of any person other than the Depository for such Global Security or any nominee of such Depository unless:

(1) the Depository has notified us that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depository for such Global Security or has ceased to be qualified to act as such as required by the applicable Indenture, and in either case we fail to appoint a successor Depository within 90 days;

[Table of Contents](#)

(2) an Event of Default with respect to the debt securities represented by such Global Security has occurred and is continuing and the Trustee has received a written request from the Depository to issue certificated debt securities; or

(3) other circumstances exist, in addition to or in lieu of those described above, as may be described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

All debt securities issued in exchange for a Global Security or any portion thereof will be registered in such names as the Depository may direct (Sections 205 and 305).

As long as the Depository, or its nominee, is the registered holder of a Global Security, the Depository or such nominee, as the case may be, will be considered the sole owner and Holder of such Global Security and the debt securities that it represents for all purposes under the debt securities and the applicable Indenture (Section 308). Except in the limited circumstances referred to above, owners of beneficial interests in a Global Security will not be entitled to have such Global Security or any debt securities that it represents registered in their names, will not receive or be entitled to receive physical delivery of certificated debt securities in exchange for those interests and will not be considered to be the owners or Holders of such Global Security or any debt securities that it represents for any purpose under the debt securities or the applicable Indenture. All payments on a Global Security will be made to the Depository or its nominee, as the case may be, as the Holder of the security. The laws of some jurisdictions require that some purchasers of debt securities take physical delivery of such debt securities in definitive form. These laws may impair the ability to transfer beneficial interests in a Global Security.

Ownership of beneficial interests in a Global Security will be limited to institutions that have accounts with the Depository or its nominee (“participants”) and to persons that may hold beneficial interests through participants. In connection with the issuance of any Global Security, the Depository will credit, on its book-entry registration and transfer system, the respective principal amounts of debt securities represented by the Global Security to the

accounts of its participants. Ownership of beneficial interests in a Global Security will be shown only on, and the transfer of those ownership interests will be effected only through, records maintained by the Depository (with respect to participants' interests) or any such participant (with respect to interests of persons held by such participants on their behalf). Payments, transfers, exchanges and other matters relating to beneficial interests in a Global Security may be subject to various policies and procedures adopted by the Depository from time to time. None of us, the Subsidiary Guarantors, the Trustees or the agents of ourself, the Subsidiary Guarantors or the Trustees will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the Depository's or any participant's records relating to, or for payments made on account of, beneficial interests in a Global Security, or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial interests.

Payment and Paying Agents

Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, payment of interest on a debt security on any Interest Payment Date will be made to the Person in whose name such debt security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest (Section 307).

Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, principal of and any premium and interest on the debt securities of a particular series will be payable at the office of such Paying Agent or Paying Agents as we may designate for such purpose from time to time, except that at our option payment of any interest on debt securities in certificated form may be made by check mailed to the address of the Person entitled thereto as such address appears in the Security Register. Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, the corporate trust office of the Trustee under the Senior Indenture in the City of New York will be designated as sole Paying Agent for payments with respect to senior debt securities of each series, and the corporate trust office of the Trustee under the Subordinated Indenture in the City of New York will be designated as the sole Paying Agent for payment with respect to subordinated debt securities of each series. Any other Paying Agents initially designated by us for the debt securities of a particular series will be named in the applicable prospectus supplement. We may at any time designate additional Paying Agents or rescind the designation of any Paying Agent or approve a change in the office through which any Paying Agent acts, except that we will be required to maintain a Paying Agent in each Place of Payment for the debt securities of a particular series (Section 1002).

All money paid by us to a Paying Agent for the payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on any debt security which remain unclaimed at the end of two years after such principal, premium or interest has become due and payable will be repaid to us, and the Holder of such debt security thereafter may look only to us for payment (Section 1003).

Consolidation, Merger and Sale of Assets

We may not consolidate with or merge into, or transfer, lease or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of our assets to, any Person (a "successor Person"), and may not permit any Person to consolidate with or merge into us, unless:

(1) the successor Person (if any) is a corporation, partnership, trust or other entity organized and validly existing under the laws of any domestic jurisdiction and assumes our obligations on the debt securities and under the Indentures including the due and punctual payment of the principal of, any premium on, and any interest on, all of the outstanding debt securities and the performance of every covenant applicable to be performed or observed by us;

(2) immediately before and after giving pro forma effect to the transaction, no Event of Default, and no event which, after

[Table of Contents](#)

notice or lapse of time or both, would become an Event of Default, has occurred and is continuing;

(3) we deliver to the trustee an officer's certificate and an opinion of counsel, each stating that such consolidation, merger, conveyance or transfer and such Supplemental Indenture comply with the foregoing provisions relating to such transaction; and

(4) several other conditions, including any additional conditions with respect to any particular debt securities specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, are met (Section 801).

Events of Default

Unless otherwise specified in the prospectus supplement, each of the following will constitute an Event of Default under the applicable Indenture with respect to debt securities of any series:

(1) failure to pay principal of or any premium on any debt security of that series when due, whether or not, in the case of subordinated debt securities, such payment is prohibited by the subordination provisions of the Subordinated Indenture;

(2) failure to pay any interest on any debt securities of that series when due, continued for 30 days, whether or not, in the case of subordinated debt securities, such payment is prohibited by the subordination provisions of the Subordinated Indenture;

(3) failure to deposit any sinking fund payment, when due, in respect of any debt security of that series, whether or not, in the case of subordinated debt securities, such deposit is prohibited by the subordination provisions of the Subordinated Indenture;

(4) failure to perform or comply with the provisions described under "—Consolidation, Merger and Sale of Assets";

(5) failure to perform any of our other covenants in such Indenture (other than a covenant included in such Indenture solely for the benefit of a series other than that series), continued for 60 days after written notice has been given by the applicable Trustee, or the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding debt securities of that series, as provided in such Indenture; and

(6) certain events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization affecting us or any Significant Subsidiary.

If an Event of Default (other than an Event of Default with respect to Evolution Petroleum Corporation described in clause (6) above) with respect to the debt securities of any series at the time Outstanding occurs and is continuing, either the applicable Trustee or the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding debt securities of that series by notice as provided in the Indenture may declare the principal amount of the debt securities of that series (or, in the case of any debt security that is an Original Issue Discount Security, such portion of the principal amount of such debt security as may be specified in the terms of such debt security) to be due and payable immediately. If an Event of Default with respect to Evolution Petroleum Corporation described in clause (6) above with respect to the debt securities of any series at the time Outstanding occurs, the principal amount of all the debt securities of that series (or, in the case of any such Original Issue Discount Security, such specified amount) will automatically, and without any action by the applicable Trustee or any Holder, become immediately due and payable. After any such acceleration, but before a judgment or decree based on acceleration, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding debt securities of that series may, under certain circumstances, rescind and annul such acceleration if all Events of Default, other than the non-payment of accelerated principal (or other specified amount), have been cured or waived as provided in the applicable Indenture (Section 502). For information as to waiver of defaults, see “—Modification and Waiver” below.

A default under other indebtedness of the Company will not be a default under the Indentures and a default under one series of debt securities will not necessarily be a default under another series. Any additions, deletions or other changes to the Events of Default which will apply to a series of debt securities will be described in the prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities.

Under the Indentures, the trustee must give to the holders of each series of debt securities notice of all uncured defaults known to it with respect to such series within 90 days after such a default occurs (the term default to include the events specified above without notice or grace periods). However, except in the case of default in the payment of principal of, any premium on, or any interest on any of the debt securities, or default in the payment of any sinking or purchase fund installment or analogous obligations, the trustee shall be protected in withholding such notice if it in good faith determines that the withholding of such notice is in the interests of the holders of the debt securities of such series (Section 602).

Subject to the provisions of the Indentures relating to the duties of the Trustees in case an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing, each Trustee will be under no obligation to exercise any of its rights or powers under the applicable Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Holders, unless such Holders have offered to such Trustee reasonable indemnity (Section 603). Subject to such provisions for the indemnification of the Trustees, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding debt securities of any series will have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee with respect to the debt securities of that series (Section 512).

No Holder of a debt security of any series will have any right to institute any proceeding with respect to the applicable Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or a trustee, or for any other remedy thereunder, unless:

- (1) such Holder has previously given to the Trustee under the applicable Indenture written notice of a continuing Event of

[Table of Contents](#)

Default with respect to the debt securities of that series;

- (2) the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding debt securities of that series have made written request, and such Holder or Holders have offered reasonable indemnity, to the Trustee to institute such proceeding as trustee; and

- (3) the Trustee has failed to institute such proceeding, and has not received from the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding debt securities of that series a direction inconsistent with such request, within 60 days after such notice, request and offer (Section 507).

However, such limitations do not apply to a suit instituted by a Holder of a debt security for the enforcement of payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on such debt security on or after the applicable due date specified in such debt security or, if applicable, to convert such debt security (Section 508).

We will be required to furnish to each Trustee annually a statement by certain of our officers as to whether or not we, to their knowledge, are in default in the performance or observance of any of the terms, provisions and conditions of the applicable Indenture and, if so, specifying all such known defaults (Section 1004).

Modification and Waiver

We and the trustee may, without the consent of the holders of the debt securities, enter into one or more Supplemental Indentures for, among others, one or more of the following purposes, provided that in the case of clauses (2), (3), (4) and (6), the interests of the holders of debt securities would not be adversely affected:

- (1) to evidence the succession of another corporation to us, and the assumption by such successor of our obligations under the applicable Indenture and the debt securities of any series;

- (2) to add covenants by us, or surrender any of our rights conferred by the applicable Indenture, for the benefit of the holders of debt securities of any or all series;

- (3) to cure any ambiguity, omission, defect or inconsistency in or make any other provision with respect to questions arising under the applicable Indenture;

- (4) to establish the form or terms of any series of debt securities, including any subordinated securities;

- (5) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of any successor trustee with respect to one or more series of debt securities or to facilitate the administration of the trusts thereunder by one or more trustees in accordance with the applicable Indenture; and

- (6) to provide any additional Events of Default (Section 901).

Modifications and amendments of an Indenture may be made by us, the Subsidiary Guarantors, if applicable, and the applicable Trustee with the consent of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding debt securities of each series affected by such modification or amendment; provided, however, that no such modification or amendment may, without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding debt security affected thereby:

- (1) change the Stated Maturity of the principal of, or any installment of principal of or interest on, any debt security;
- (2) reduce the principal amount of, or any premium or interest on, any debt security;
- (3) reduce the amount of principal of an Original Issue Discount Security or any other debt security payable upon acceleration of the Maturity thereof;
- (4) change the place or currency of payment of principal of, or any premium or interest on, any debt security;
- (5) impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any payment due on or any conversion right with respect to any debt security;
- (6) modify the subordination provisions in the case of subordinated debt securities, or modify any conversion provisions, in either case in a manner adverse to the Holders of the subordinated debt securities;
- (7) reduce the percentage in principal amount of Outstanding debt securities of any series, the consent of whose Holders is required for modification or amendment of the Indenture;
- (8) reduce the percentage in principal amount of Outstanding debt securities of any series necessary for waiver of compliance with certain provisions of the Indenture or for waiver of certain defaults; or
- (9) modify such provisions with respect to modification, amendment or waiver (Section 902).

The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding debt securities of any series may waive compliance by us with certain restrictive provisions of the applicable Indenture (Section 1009). The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the

[Table of Contents](#)

Outstanding debt securities of any series may waive any past default under the applicable Indenture, except a default in the payment of principal, premium or interest and certain covenants and provisions of the Indenture which cannot be amended without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding debt security of such series (Section 513).

Each of the Indentures provides that in determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of the Outstanding debt securities have given or taken any direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action under such Indenture as of any date:

- (1) the principal amount of an Original Issue Discount Security that will be deemed to be Outstanding will be the amount of the principal that would be due and payable as of such date upon acceleration of maturity to such date;
- (2) if, as of such date, the principal amount payable at the Stated Maturity of a debt security is not determinable (for example, because it is based on an index), the principal amount of such debt security deemed to be Outstanding as of such date will be an amount determined in the manner prescribed for such debt security; and
- (3) the principal amount of a debt security denominated in one or more foreign currencies or currency units that will be deemed to be Outstanding will be the United States-dollar equivalent, determined as of such date in the manner prescribed for such debt security, of the principal amount of such debt security (or, in the case of a debt security described in clause (1) or (2) above, of the amount described in such clause).

Certain debt securities, including those owned by us or any of our other Affiliates, will not be deemed to be Outstanding (Section 101).

Except in certain limited circumstances, we will be entitled to set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the Holders of Outstanding debt securities of any series entitled to give or take any direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action under the applicable Indenture, in the manner and subject to the limitations provided in the Indenture. In certain limited circumstances, the Trustee will be entitled to set a record date for action by Holders. If a record date is set for any action to be taken by Holders of a particular series, only persons who are Holders of Outstanding debt securities of that series on the record date may take such action. To be effective, such action must be taken by Holders of the requisite principal amount of such debt securities within a specified period following the record date. For any particular record date, this period will be 180 days or such other period as may be specified by us (or the Trustee, if it set the record date), and may be shortened or lengthened (but not beyond 180 days) from time to time (Section 104).

Satisfaction and Discharge

Each Indenture will be discharged and will cease to be of further effect as to all Outstanding debt securities of any series issued thereunder, when:

(1) either:

(a) all Outstanding debt securities of that series that have been authenticated (except lost, stolen or destroyed debt securities that have been replaced or paid and debt securities for whose payment money has theretofore been deposited in trust and thereafter repaid to us) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or

(b) all outstanding debt securities of that series that have not been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation have become due and payable or will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year or are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee and in any case we have irrevocably deposited with the Trustee as trust funds money in an amount sufficient, without consideration of any

reinvestment of interest, to pay the entire indebtedness of such debt securities not delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, for principal, premium, if any, and accrued interest to the Stated Maturity or redemption date;

(2) we have paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable by us under the Indenture with respect to the debt securities of that series; and

(3) we have delivered an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel to the Trustee stating that all conditions precedent to satisfaction and discharge of the Indenture with respect to the debt securities of that series have been satisfied (Article Four).

Legal Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance

If and to the extent indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, we may elect, at our option at any time, to have the provisions of Section 1502, relating to defeasance and discharge of indebtedness, which we call "legal defeasance" or Section 1503, relating to defeasance of certain restrictive covenants applied to the debt securities of any series, or to any specified part of a series, which we call "covenant defeasance" (Section 1501).

Legal Defeasance. The Indentures provide that, upon our exercise of our option (if any) to have Section 1502 applied to any debt securities, we will be discharged from all our obligations, and, if such debt securities are subordinated debt securities, the provisions of the Subordinated Indenture relating to subordination will cease to be effective, with respect to such debt securities (except for certain obligations to convert, exchange or register the transfer of debt securities, to replace stolen, lost or mutilated debt securities, to

[Table of Contents](#)

maintain paying agencies and to hold moneys for payment in trust) upon the deposit in trust for the benefit of the Holders of such debt securities of money or United States Government Obligations, or both, which, through the payment of principal and interest in respect thereof in accordance with their terms, will provide money in an amount sufficient to pay the principal of and any premium and interest on such debt securities on the respective Stated Maturities in accordance with the terms of the applicable Indenture and such debt securities. Such defeasance or discharge may occur only if, among other things:

(1) we have delivered to the applicable Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that we have received from, or there has been published by, the United States Internal Revenue Service a ruling, or there has been a change in tax law, in either case to the effect that Holders of such debt securities will not recognize gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such deposit and legal defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amount, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit and legal defeasance were not to occur;

(2) no Event of Default or event that with the passing of time or the giving of notice, or both, shall constitute an Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing at the time of such deposit or, with respect to any Event of Default described in clause (6) under "—Events of Default," at any time until 121 days after such deposit;

(3) such deposit and legal defeasance will not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, any agreement or instrument to which we are a party or by which we are bound;

(4) in the case of subordinated debt securities, at the time of such deposit, no default in the payment of all or a portion of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any of our Senior Debt shall have occurred and be continuing, no event of default shall have resulted in the acceleration of any of our Senior Debt and no other event of default with respect to any of our Senior Debt shall have occurred and be continuing permitting after notice or the lapse of time, or both, the acceleration thereof; and

(5) we have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that such deposit shall not cause the Trustee or the trust so created to be subject to the Investment Company Act of 1940 (Sections 1502 and 1504).

Covenant Defeasance. The Indentures provide that, upon our exercise of our option (if any) to have Section 1503 applied to any debt securities, we may omit to comply with certain restrictive covenants (but not to conversion, if applicable), including those that may be described in the applicable prospectus supplement, the occurrence of certain Events of Default, which are described above in clause (5) (with respect to such restrictive covenants) and clause (6) (with respect only to Significant Subsidiaries) under "Events of Default" and any that may be described in the applicable prospectus supplement, will not be deemed to either be or result in an Event of Default and, if such debt securities are subordinated debt securities, the provisions of the Subordinated Indenture relating to subordination will cease to be effective, in each case with respect to such debt securities. In order to exercise such option, we must deposit, in trust for the benefit of the Holders of such debt securities, money or United States Government Obligations, or both, which, through the payment of principal and interest in respect thereof in accordance with their terms, will provide money in an amount sufficient to pay the principal of and any premium and interest on such debt securities on the respective Stated Maturities in accordance with the terms of the applicable Indenture and such debt securities. Such covenant defeasance may occur only if we have delivered to the applicable Trustee an Opinion of Counsel that in effect says that Holders of such debt securities will not recognize gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such deposit and covenant defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amount, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit and covenant defeasance were not to occur, and the requirements set forth in clauses (2), (3), (4) and (5) above are satisfied. If we exercise this option with respect to any debt securities and such debt securities were declared due and payable because of the occurrence of any Event of Default, the amount of money and United States Government Obligations so deposited in trust would be sufficient to pay amounts due on such debt securities at the time of their respective Stated Maturities but may not be sufficient to pay amounts due on such debt securities upon any acceleration resulting from such Event of Default. In such case, we would remain liable for such payments (Sections 1503 and 1504).

If we exercise either our legal defeasance or covenant defeasance option, any Subsidiary Guarantees will terminate (Section 1304).

Notices

Notices to Holders of debt securities will be given by mail to the addresses of such Holders as they may appear in the Security Register (Sections 101 and 106).

Title

We, the Subsidiary Guarantors, the Trustees and any agent of us, the Subsidiary Guarantors or a Trustee may treat the Person in whose name a debt security is registered as the absolute owner of the debt security (whether or not such debt security may be overdue) for the purpose of making payment and for all other purposes (Section 308).

Governing Law

The Indentures and the debt securities will be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the law of the State of New York (Section 112).

[Table of Contents](#)

DETERMINATION OF OFFERING PRICE

We will offer the securities in amounts, at prices and on terms to be determined by market conditions at the time of the offerings.

PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

We may sell securities in and outside the United States through underwriters or dealers, directly to purchasers or through agents or in ordinary brokerage transactions and transactions in which the broker-dealer solicits purchasers. To the extent required by applicable law, a prospectus supplement will include the following information:

- the terms of the offering;
- the names of any underwriters or agents;
- the purchase price of the securities and, if the purchase price is not payable in U.S. dollars, the currency or composite currency in which the purchase price is payable;
- the net proceeds to us from the sale of the common stock;
- any delayed delivery arrangements;
- any underwriting discounts, commissions and other items constituting underwriters' compensation;
- the initial public offering price;
- any discounts or concessions allowed or reallocated or paid to dealers; and
- any commissions paid to agents.

Sale Through Underwriters or Dealers

If we use underwriters in the sale of securities, the underwriters will acquire the securities for their own account. The underwriters may resell the securities from time to time in one or more transactions, including negotiated transactions, at a fixed public offering price or at varying prices determined at the time of sale. Underwriters may offer securities to the public either through underwriting syndicates represented by one or more managing underwriters or directly by one or more firms acting as underwriters. Unless we inform you otherwise in the prospectus supplement, the obligations of the underwriters to purchase the securities will be subject to conditions, and the underwriters will be obligated to purchase all the securities if they purchase any securities. The underwriters may change from time to time any initial public offering price and any discounts or concessions allowed or reallocated or paid to dealers.

During and after an offering through underwriters, the underwriters may purchase and sell the securities in the open market. These transactions may include over allotment and stabilizing transactions and purchases to cover syndicate short positions created in connection with the offering. The underwriters may also impose a penalty bid, whereby selling concessions allowed to syndicate members or other broker-dealers for the offered securities sold for their account may be reclaimed by the syndicate if such offered securities is repurchased by the syndicate in stabilizing or covering transactions. These activities may stabilize, maintain or otherwise affect the market price of the offered securities, which may be higher than the price that might otherwise prevail in the open market. If commenced, these activities may be discontinued at any time.

If we use dealers in the sale of securities, we will sell the securities to them as principals. They may then resell the securities to the public at varying prices determined by the dealers at the time of resale. The dealers participating in any sale of the securities may be deemed to be underwriters within the meaning of the Securities Act with respect to any sale of that securities. We will include in any prospectus supplement the names of the dealers and the terms of the transactions.

Direct Sales and Sales Through Agents

We may sell the securities directly. In that event, no underwriters or agents would be involved. We may also sell the securities through agents we designate from time to time. In the prospectus supplement, we will name any agent involved in the offer or sale of the securities, and we will describe any commissions payable by us to the agent. Unless we inform you otherwise in the prospectus supplement, any agent will agree to use its reasonable best efforts to solicit purchases for the period of its appointment.

We may sell the securities directly to institutional investors or others who may be deemed to be underwriters within the meaning of the Securities Act with respect to any sale of the securities. We will describe the terms of any such sales in the prospectus supplement.

Delayed Delivery Contracts

If we so indicate in the prospectus supplement, we may authorize agents, underwriters or dealers to solicit offers from certain

[Table of Contents](#)

types of institutions to purchase securities from us at the public offering price under delayed delivery contracts. These contracts would provide for payment and delivery on a specified date in the future. The contracts would be subject only to those conditions described in the prospectus supplement. The prospectus supplement will describe the commission payable for solicitation of those contracts.

General Information

We may have agreements with the agents, dealers and underwriters to indemnify them against civil liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, or to contribute with respect to payments that the agents, dealers or underwriters may be required to make. Agents, dealers and underwriters may engage in transactions with us or perform services for us in the ordinary course of their businesses.

We will bear all costs, expenses and fees associated with the registration of the securities.

LEGAL MATTERS

The validity of the securities will be passed upon for us by Adams and Reese LLP, Houston, Texas. Legal counsel to any underwriters may pass upon legal matters for such underwriters.

EXPERTS

Hein & Associates LLP, independent registered public accounting firm, has audited our financial statements included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended June 30, 2009, as set forth in their report, which are incorporated by reference in this prospectus. Our financial statements are incorporated by reference in reliance on Hein & Associates LLP's report, given on their authority as experts in accounting and auditing.

Certain estimates of proved oil and gas reserves for Evolution Petroleum Corporation incorporated by reference herein were based in part upon an engineering report prepared by W.D. Von Gonten & Co., independent petroleum engineers. These estimates are included and incorporated herein in reliance on the authority of such firm as an expert in such matters.

WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

This prospectus constitutes a part of a registration statement on Form S-3 we filed with the SEC under the Securities Act. This prospectus does not contain all the information set forth in the registration statement and exhibits thereto, and statements included in this prospectus as to the content of any contract or other document referred to are not necessarily complete. For further information, please review the registration statement and the exhibits and schedules filed with the registration statement.

We are subject to the informational requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"), and we file reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC in accordance with the Exchange Act. These reports, proxy statements and other information can be inspected and copied at the SEC's Public Reference Room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549 on official business days during the hours of 10 a.m. to 3 p.m. In addition, materials we filed electronically with the SEC are available at the SEC's Web site at <http://www.sec.gov>. The SEC's Web site contains reports, proxy and information statements, and other information regarding issuers that file electronically with the SEC. Information about the operation of the SEC's Public Reference Room may be obtained by calling the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330. Copies of certain information filed by us with the SEC are also available on our website at www.evolutionpetroleum.com. Our website is not a part of this prospectus.

You should rely only on the information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement. We have not authorized anyone else to provide you with additional or different information. We may only use this prospectus to sell securities if it is accompanied by a prospectus supplement. We are only offering these securities in states where the offer is permitted. You should not assume that the information in this prospectus or the applicable prospectus supplement is accurate as of any date other than the dates on the front of these documents.

INFORMATION INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

We are incorporating by reference in this prospectus the documents that we file with the SEC. This means that we are disclosing important information to you by referring to these filings. The information we incorporate by reference is considered a part of this prospectus, and subsequent information that we file with the SEC will automatically update and supersede this information.

Any statement contained in a document incorporated or considered to be incorporated by reference in this prospectus shall be considered to be modified or superseded for purposes of this prospectus to the extent that a statement contained in this prospectus or in any other subsequently filed document that is considered to be incorporated by reference in this prospectus modifies or supersedes such statement.

We incorporate by reference the following documents that we have filed with the SEC:

- Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended June 30, 2009, filed on September 25, 2009, including information

[Table of Contents](#)

specifically incorporated by reference into our Form 10-K from our Proxy Statement for our Annual Meeting of Stockholders held on December 09, 2009;

- Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2009, filed on November 13, 2009;
- Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended December 31, 2009, filed on February 12, 2010;
- Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended March 31, 2010, filed on May 14, 2010;
- The description of the Company's common stock contained in its registration statement on Form 8-A filed on July 13, 2006, and any amendment or report subsequently filed for the purpose of updating such description.

In addition, we incorporate by reference into this prospectus (i) All other reports filed pursuant to Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Exchange Act since June 30, 2009, except for information furnished under Form 8-K which is not deemed filed and not incorporated herein by reference, (ii) all documents filed by us pursuant to Section 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act subsequent to the date of this prospectus and before we have sold all of the common stock to which the prospectus relates or the offering is otherwise terminated, and (iii) all documents filed by us pursuant to the Exchange Act after the date of the initial registration statement and prior to effectiveness of the registration statement.

We will provide without charge to each person, including any beneficial owner, to whom a copy of this prospectus is delivered, upon written or oral request, a copy of any or all of the information that has been incorporated in this prospectus by reference but not delivered with this prospectus. Requests for copies should be directed to Sterling H. McDonald, Vice President and Chief Financial Officer — Evolution Petroleum Corporation, 2500 City West Blvd., Suite 1300, Houston, Texas 77042, telephone (713) 913-0122.

[Table of Contents](#)

PART II
INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS

Item 14. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution.*

The following table sets forth all expenses payable by Evolution Petroleum Corporation (sometimes referred to as the "Company" in this Part II of the registration statement) in connection with the issuance and distribution of the securities.

| | |
|--|------------------|
| SEC registration fee | \$ 3,565 |
| Legal fees and expenses | \$ 15,000 |
| Accounting fees and expenses | \$ 5,000 |
| Transfer agent and registrar fees and expenses | \$ 5,000 |
| Printing expenses | \$ 5,000 |
| Miscellaneous expenses | \$ 10,000 |
| Total | <u>\$ 43,565</u> |

* Other than the SEC registration fee, all amounts set forth above are estimates.

Item 15. Indemnification of Directors and Officers.

Under Nevada law, a corporation shall indemnify a director or officer against expenses, including attorneys' fees, actually and reasonably incurred by him, to the extent the director or officer has been successful on the merits or otherwise in defense of any action, suit or proceeding. A corporation may indemnify a director or officer who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed action, suit or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative or investigative, against expenses, including attorneys' fees, judgments, fines and amounts paid in settlement actually and reasonably incurred by him or her in connection with the action, suit or proceeding. Excepted from that immunity are:

- a willful failure to deal fairly with the company or its stockholders in connection with a matter in which the director has a material conflict of interest;
- a violation of criminal law (unless the director had reasonable cause to believe that his or her conduct was lawful or no reasonable cause to believe that his or her conduct was unlawful);
- a transaction from which the director derived an improper personal profit;
- and willful misconduct.

Our bylaws include an indemnification provision under which we have the power to indemnify our directors, officers and former officers and directors (including heirs and personal representatives) against all costs, charges and expenses actually and reasonably incurred, including an amount paid to settle an action or satisfy a judgment to which the director or officer is made a party by reason of being or having been a director or officer of Evolution Petroleum Corporation or any of our subsidiaries.

Our bylaws also provide that our directors may cause us to purchase and maintain insurance for the benefit of a person who is or was serving as a director, officer, employee or agent of Evolution Petroleum Corporation or any of our subsidiaries (including heirs and personal representatives) against a liability incurred by him or her as our director, officer, employee or agent.

ITEM 16. Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules.

(a) A list of the exhibits required by Item 601 of Regulation S-K to be filed as a part of this registration statement is set forth in the Index to Exhibits on page II-8, which immediately precedes such exhibits.

ITEM 17. Undertakings.

The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes:

(1) To file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this registration statement:

(i) To include any prospectus required by Section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act of 1933;

(ii) To reflect in the prospectus any facts or events arising after the effective date of the registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment thereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in the registration statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any increase or decrease in volume of securities offered (if the total dollar value of securities offered would not exceed that which was registered) and any deviation from the low or high end of the estimated maximum offering range may be reflected in the form of prospectus filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) if, in the aggregate, the changes in volume and price represent no more than a 20 percent change in the maximum aggregate offering price set forth in the "Calculation of Registration Fee" table in the effective registration statement;

(iii) To include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in the registration statement or any material change to such information in the registration statement;

Provided, however, that:

Paragraphs (1)(i), (1)(ii) and (1)(iii) of this section do not apply if the registration statement is on Form S-3 and the information required to be included in a post-effective amendment by those paragraphs is contained in reports filed with or furnished to the Commission by the registrant pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 that are incorporated by reference in the registration statement, or is contained in a form of prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) that is part of the registration statement.

(2) That, for the purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial *bona fide* offering thereof.

(3) To remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering.

(4) That, for the purpose of determining liability under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser:

(i) Each prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(3) shall be deemed to be part of the registration statement as of the date the filed prospectus was deemed part of and included in the registration statement; and

(ii) Each prospectus required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424(b)(2), (b)(5), or (b)(7) as part of a registration statement in reliance on Rule 430B relating to an offering made pursuant to Rule 415(a)(1)(i), (vii), or (x) for the purpose of providing the information required by Section 10(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the earlier of the date such form of prospectus is first used after effectiveness or the date of the first contract of sale of securities in the offering described in the prospectus. As provided in Rule 430B, for liability purposes of the issuer and any person that is at that date an underwriter, such date shall be deemed to be a new effective date of the registration statement relating to the securities in the registration statement to which that prospectus relates, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial *bona fide* offering thereof. *Provided, however,* that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such effective date, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such effective date.

(5) That, for the purpose of determining liability of the registrant under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser in the initial distribution of the securities:

The undersigned registrant undertakes that in a primary offering of securities of the undersigned registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the undersigned registrant will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to such purchaser:

(i) Any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of the undersigned registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424;

(ii) Any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant or used or referred to by the undersigned registrant;

(iii) The portion of any other free writing prospectus relating to the offering containing material information about the undersigned registrant or its securities provided by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant; and

(iv) Any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by the undersigned registrant to the purchaser.

(6) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes that, for purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each filing of the registrant's annual report pursuant to Section 13(a) or Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (and, where applicable, each filing of an employee benefit plan's annual report pursuant to Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934) that is incorporated by reference in the registration statement shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial *bona fide* offering thereof.

(7) Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act of 1933 may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the registrant pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

[Table of Contents](#)

Signatures

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form S-3 and has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in Houston, Texas, on the 14th day of July, 2010.

EVOLUTION PETROLEUM CORPORATION

By: /s/ Robert S. Herlin

Robert S. Herlin
Chairman of the Board, President and Chief
Executive Officer

Power of Attorney

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS, that each person whose signature appears below constitutes and appoints each of Robert S. Herlin and Sterling H. McDonald his or her true and lawful attorneys-in-fact and agents, with full power of substitution and resubstitution, for him or her and in his or her name, place and stead, in any and all capacities, to sign, execute and file with the Securities and Exchange Commission and any state securities regulatory board or commission any documents relating to the proposed issuance and registration of the securities offered pursuant to this registration statement on Form S-3 under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, including any amendment or amendments relating thereto (and, in addition, any post-effective amendments), with all exhibits and any and all documents required to be filed with respect thereto with any regulatory authority, granting unto said attorneys-in-fact and agents, and each of them, full power and authority to do and perform each and every act and thing requisite and necessary to be done in and about the premises in order to effectuate the same as fully to all intents and purposes as he or she might or could do if personally present, hereby ratifying and confirming all that said attorneys-in-fact and agents, or either of them, or their or his substitutes, may lawfully do or cause to be done.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this registration statement has been signed below by the following persons in the capacities indicated below on the 14th day of July, 2010.

| <u>Signature</u> | <u>Title</u> |
|---|---|
| <u>/s/ Robert S. Herlin</u> Robert S. Herlin | Chairman of the Board, President and Chief Executive Officer (Principal Executive Officer) |
| <u>/s/ Sterling H. McDonald</u> Sterling H. McDonald | Vice President, Chief Financial Officer and Treasurer (Principal Financial Officer) |
| <u>/s/ Edward J. DiPaolo</u> Edward J. DiPaolo | Director |
| <u>/s/ Gene Stoever</u> Gene Stoever | Director |
| <u>/s/ William Dozier</u> William Dozier | Director |
| <u>/s/ Kelly W. Loyd</u> Kelly W. Loyd | Director |
| <u>/s/ Laird Q. Cagan</u> Laird Q. Cagan | Director |

[Table of Contents](#)

INDEX TO EXHIBITS

| <u>Exhibit Number</u> | <u>Description</u> |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
|---------------------------|--------------------|

- 1.1* — Form of Underwriting Agreement.
- 4.1 — Specimen form of the Company's Common Stock Certificate (Previously filed as exhibit 4.1 to Form SB-2/A filed on October 19, 2005) (File No. 333-125564)
- 4.2** — Form of Senior Indenture.
- 4.3** — Form of Subordinated Indenture.
- 4.4* — Form of Warrant Agreement.
- 4.25* — Form of Warrant Certificate.
- 4.6* — Form of Debt Securities.
- 5.1** — Opinion of Adams & Reese, LLP.
- 12.1** — Statement of Computation of Ration of Earnings to Fixed Charges and Earnings to Fixed Charges Plus Preferred Stock Dividends.
- 23.1** — Consent of Hein & Associates LLP, Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm.
- 23.2** — Consent of Adams & Reese, LLP (included in its legal opinion filed as Exhibit 5.1).
- 23.3** — Consent of Independent Petroleum Engineers and Geologists.
- 24.1** — Power of Attorney of the Officers and Directors of Evolution Petroleum Corporation (included on the signature page).

* To be filed by amendment or as an exhibit to a current report on Form 8-K of the registrant.

** Filed with this Registration Statement.

Evolution Petroleum Corporation,

as Issuer

and

,

as Trustee

SENIOR INDENTURE

Dated as of , 20

TABLE OF CONTENTS

| | |
|---|----|
| ARTICLE ONE DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION | 1 |
| SECTION 101. Definitions. | 1 |
| SECTION 102. Compliance Certificates and Opinions. | 7 |
| SECTION 103. Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee. | 7 |
| SECTION 104. Acts of Holders; Record Dates. | 8 |
| SECTION 105. Notices, Etc., to Trustee and Company. | 10 |
| SECTION 106. Notice to Holders; Waiver. | 10 |
| SECTION 107. Conflict with Trust Indenture Act. | 11 |
| SECTION 108. Effect of Headings And Table of Contents. | 11 |
| SECTION 109. Successors and Assigns. | 11 |
| SECTION 110. Separability Clause. | 11 |
| SECTION 111. Benefits of Indenture. | 11 |
| SECTION 112. Governing Law. | 11 |
| SECTION 113. Legal Holidays. | 11 |
| ARTICLE TWO SECURITY FORMS | 12 |
| SECTION 201. Forms Generally. | 12 |
| SECTION 202. Form of face of Security. | 12 |
| SECTION 203. Form of Reverse of Security. | 14 |
| SECTION 204. [Intentionally Omitted] | 17 |
| SECTION 205. Form of Legend for Global Securities. | 17 |
| SECTION 206. Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication. | 17 |
| SECTION 207. Form of Conversion Notice. | 18 |
| ARTICLE THREE THE SECURITIES | 19 |
| SECTION 301. Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series. | 19 |
| SECTION 302. Denominations. | 21 |
| SECTION 303. Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating. | 22 |
| SECTION 304. Temporary Securities. | 23 |
| SECTION 305. Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange. | 23 |
| SECTION 306. Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities. | 25 |
| SECTION 307. Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved. | 26 |
| SECTION 308. Persons Deemed Owners. | 27 |
| SECTION 309. Cancellation. | 27 |
| SECTION 310. Computation of Interest. | 27 |
| ARTICLE FOUR SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE | 28 |
| SECTION 401. Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture. | 28 |
| SECTION 402. Application of Trust Money. | 29 |
| ARTICLE FIVE REMEDIES | 29 |
| SECTION 501. Events of Default. | 29 |
| SECTION 502. Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment. | 30 |
| SECTION 503. Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee. | 31 |
| SECTION 504. Trustee May File Proofs of Claim. | 32 |
| SECTION 505. Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities. | 32 |
| SECTION 506. Application of Money Collected. | 33 |
| SECTION 507. Limitation on Suits. | 33 |
| SECTION 508. Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest. | 34 |
| SECTION 509. Restoration of Rights and Remedies. | 34 |

| | |
|---|----|
| SECTION 510. Rights and Remedies Cumulative. | 34 |
| SECTION 511. Delay or Omission Not Waiver. | 34 |
| SECTION 512. Control by Holders. | 34 |
| SECTION 513. Waiver of Past Defaults. | 35 |
| SECTION 514. Undertaking for Costs. | 35 |
| SECTION 515. Waiver of Usury, Stay or Extension Laws. | 35 |
| ARTICLE SIX THE TRUSTEE | 36 |
| SECTION 601. Certain Duties and Responsibilities. | 36 |
| SECTION 602. Notice of Defaults. | 36 |
| SECTION 603. Certain Rights of Trustee. | 36 |
| SECTION 604. Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities. | 37 |
| SECTION 605. May Hold Securities. | 37 |
| SECTION 606. Money Held in Trust. | 37 |
| SECTION 607. Compensation and Reimbursement. | 37 |
| SECTION 608. Conflicting Interests. | 38 |
| SECTION 609. Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility. | 38 |
| SECTION 610. Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor. | 38 |
| SECTION 611. Acceptance of Appointment by Successor. | 40 |
| SECTION 612. Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business. | 41 |
| SECTION 613. Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company. | 41 |
| SECTION 614. Appointment of Authenticating Agent. | 41 |
| ARTICLE SEVEN HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY | 43 |
| SECTION 701. Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders. | 43 |
| SECTION 702. Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders. | 43 |
| SECTION 703. Reports by Trustee. | 43 |
| SECTION 704. Reports by Company. | 44 |
| ARTICLE EIGHT CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE, TRANSFER OR LEASE | 44 |
| SECTION 801. Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms. | 44 |
| SECTION 802. [Intentionally Omitted] | 45 |
| SECTION 803. Successor Substituted. | 45 |
| ARTICLE NINE SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES | 45 |
| SECTION 901. Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders. | 45 |
| SECTION 902. Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Holders. | 46 |
| SECTION 903. Execution of Supplemental Indentures. | 47 |
| SECTION 904. Effect of Supplemental Indentures. | 47 |
| SECTION 905. Conformity With Trust Indenture Act. | 48 |
| SECTION 906. Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures. | 48 |
| ARTICLE TEN COVENANTS | 48 |
| SECTION 1001. Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest. | 48 |
| SECTION 1002. Maintenance of Office or Agency. | 48 |
| SECTION 1003. Money for Securities Payments to be Held in Trust. | 49 |
| SECTION 1004. Statement by Officers as to Default. | 50 |
| ii | |
| <hr/> | |
| SECTION 1005. Existence. | 50 |
| SECTION 1006. Maintenance of Properties. | 50 |
| SECTION 1007. Payment of Taxes and Other Claims. | 50 |
| SECTION 1008. Maintenance of Insurance. | 51 |
| SECTION 1009. Waiver of Certain Covenants. | 51 |
| ARTICLE ELEVEN REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES | 51 |
| SECTION 1101. Applicability of Article. | 51 |
| SECTION 1102. Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee. | 51 |
| SECTION 1103. Selection by Trustee of Securities to be Redeemed. | 52 |
| SECTION 1104. Notice of Redemption. | 53 |
| SECTION 1105. Deposit of Redemption Price. | 53 |
| SECTION 1106. Securities Payable on Redemption Date. | 54 |
| SECTION 1107. Securities Redeemed in Part. | 54 |
| ARTICLE TWELVE [INTENTIONALLY OMITTED] | 54 |
| ARTICLE THIRTEEN [INTENTIONALLY OMITTED] | 54 |
| ARTICLE FOURTEEN [INTENTIONALLY OMITTED] | 54 |
| ARTICLE FIFTEEN DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE | 54 |
| SECTION 1501. Company's Option to Effect Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance. | 54 |
| SECTION 1502. Defeasance and Discharge. | 55 |

| | |
|--|----|
| SECTION 1503. Covenant Defeasance. | 55 |
| SECTION 1504. Conditions to Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance. | 56 |
| SECTION 1505. Deposited Money and U.S. Government Obligations to be Held in Trust; Miscellaneous Provisions. | 57 |
| SECTION 1506. Reinstatement. | 58 |
| ARTICLE SIXTEEN SINKING FUNDS | 58 |
| SECTION 1601. Applicability of Article. | 58 |
| SECTION 1602. Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities. | 59 |
| SECTION 1603. Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund. | 59 |

EVOLUTION PETROLEUM CORPORATION

CERTAIN SECTIONS OF THIS INDENTURE RELATING TO SECTIONS 310 THROUGH 318, INCLUSIVE, OF THE TRUST INDENTURE ACT OF 1939:

| TRUST INDENTURE ACT SECTION | INDENTURE SECTION |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|
| Section 310(a)(1) | 609 |
| (a)(2) | 609 |
| (a)(3) | Not Applicable |
| (a)(4) | Not Applicable |
| (b) | 608 |
| | 610 |
| Section 311(a) | 613 |
| (b) | 613 |
| Section 312(a) | 701 |
| | 702 |
| (b) | 702 |
| (c) | 702 |
| Section 313(a) | 703 |
| (b) | 703 |
| (c) | 703 |
| (d) | 703 |
| Section 314(a) | 704 |
| (a)(4) | 101 |
| | 1004 |
| (b) | Not Applicable |
| (c)(1) | 102 |
| (c)(2) | 102 |
| (c)(3) | Not Applicable |
| (d) | Not Applicable |
| (e) | 102 |
| Section 315(a) | 601 |
| (b) | 602 |
| (c) | 601 |
| (d) | 601 |
| (e) | 514 |
| Section 316(a) | 101 |
| (a)(1)(A) | 502 |
| | 512 |
| (a)(1)(B) | 513 |
| (a)(2) | Not Applicable |
| (b) | 508 |
| (c) | 104 |
| Section 317(a)(1) | 503 |
| (a)(2) | 504 |
| (b) | 1003 |
| Section 318(a) | 107 |

NOTE: This reconsideration and tie shall not, for any purpose, be deemed to be a part of the Indenture.

INDENTURE, dated as of _____, 20____, among Evolution Petroleum Corporation, a corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of the State of Nevada (herein called the "Company"), having its principal office at 2500 CityWest Blvd., Suite 1300, Houston, Texas 77042 and _____, a banking corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of the State of New York, as Trustee (herein called the "Trustee").

RECITALS OF THE COMPANY

The Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance from time to time of its unsecured debentures, notes or other evidences of indebtedness (herein called the "Securities"), to be issued in one or more series as in this Indenture provided.

All things necessary to make this Indenture a valid agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done.

NOW, THEREFORE, THIS INDENTURE WITNESSETH:

For and in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Securities by the Holders thereof, it is mutually agreed, for the equal and proportionate benefit of all Holders of the Securities or of series thereof, as follows:

ARTICLE ONE
DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS
OF GENERAL APPLICATION

SECTION 101. Definitions.

For all purposes of this Indenture, except as otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires:

(1) the terms defined in this Article have the meanings assigned to them in this Article and include the plural as well as the singular;

(2) all other terms used herein which are defined in the Trust Indenture Act, either directly or by reference therein, have the meanings assigned to them therein;

(3) all accounting terms not otherwise defined herein have the meanings assigned to them in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and, except as otherwise herein expressly provided, the term “generally accepted accounting principles” with respect to any computation required or permitted hereunder shall mean such accounting principles as are generally accepted at the date of this instrument;

(4) unless the context otherwise requires, any reference to an “Article” or a “Section” refers to an Article or a Section, as the case may be, of this Indenture; and

1

(5) the words “herein”, “hereof”, “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

“Act,” when used with respect to any Holder, has the meaning specified in Section 104.

“Affiliate” of any specified Person means any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified Person. For the purposes of this definition, “control” when used with respect to any specified Person means the power to direct the management and policies of such Person, directly or indirectly, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise; and the terms “controlling” and “controlled” have meanings correlative to the foregoing; provided that direct or indirect beneficial ownership of 10% or more of the Voting Stock of a Person shall be deemed to control.

“Authenticating Agent” means any Person authorized by the Trustee pursuant to Section 614 to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of one or more series.

“Board of Directors” means either the board of directors of the Company or any committee of that board duly authorized to act for it in respect hereof.

“Board Resolution” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been duly adopted by its Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Business Day” when used with respect to any Place of Payment, means each Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday which is not a day on which banking institutions in that Place of Payment are authorized or obligated by law or executive order to close.

“Capital Stock” of any Person means any and all shares, interests, participations or other equivalents (however designated) of corporate stock or other equity participations, including partnership interests, whether general or limited, of such Person.

“Commission” means the Securities and Exchange Commission, from time to time constituted, created under the Exchange Act, or, if at any time after the execution of this instrument such Commission is not existing and performing the duties now assigned to it under the Trust Indenture Act, then the body performing such duties at such time.

“Common Stock” means the common stock, no par value, of the Company as the same exists at the date of execution and delivery of this Indenture or other Capital Stock of the Company into which such common stock is converted, reclassified or changed from time to time.

“Company” means the Person named as the “Company” in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor Person shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Company” shall mean such successor Person.

“Company Request” or “Company Order” means a written request or order signed in the name of the Company by its Chairman of the Board of Directors, its Vice Chairman of the Board of Directors, its President or a Vice President, and by its Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, its Secretary or an Assistant Secretary, and delivered to the Trustee.

2

“Conversion Agent” means any Person authorized by the Company to convert any Securities on behalf of the Company.

“Corporate Trust Office” means the principal office of the Trustee at which at any particular time its corporate trust business shall be administered, such office being located on the date hereof at

“corporation” means a corporation, association, limited liability company, joint-stock company or business trust.

“Covenant Defeasance” has the meaning specified in Section 1503.

“Defaulted Interest” has the meaning specified in Section 307.

“Defeasance” has the meaning specified in Section 1502.

“Depository” means, with respect to Securities of any series issuable in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities, a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act that is designated to act as Depository for such Securities as contemplated by Section 301.

“Event of Default” has the meaning specified in Section 501.

“Exchange Act” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and any statute successor thereto, in each case as amended from time to time.

“Expiration Date” has the meaning specified in Section 104.

“Global Security” means a Security that evidences all or part of the Securities of any series and bears the legend set forth in Section 205 (or such legend as may be specified as contemplated by Section 301 for such Securities).

“Holder” means a Person in whose name a Security is registered in the Security Register.

“Indenture” means this instrument as originally executed and as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof, including, for all purposes of this instrument and any such supplemental indenture, the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act that are deemed to be a part of and govern this instrument and any such supplemental indenture, respectively. The term “Indenture” shall also include the terms of particular series of Securities established as contemplated by Section 301.

“interest”, when used with respect to an Original Issue Discount Security which by its terms bears interest only after Maturity, means interest payable after Maturity.

3

“Interest Payment Date”, when used with respect to any Security, means the Stated Maturity of an installment of interest on such Security.

“Investment Company Act” means the Investment Company Act of 1940 and any statute successor thereto, in each case as amended from time to time.

“Maturity”, when used with respect to any Security, means the date on which the principal of such Security or an installment of principal becomes due and payable as therein or herein provided, whether at the Stated Maturity or by declaration of acceleration, call for redemption or otherwise.

“Notice of Default” means a written notice of the kind specified in Section 501(4).

“Officers’ Certificate” means a certificate signed by the Chairman of the Board of Directors, a Vice Chairman of the Board of Directors, the President or a Vice President, and by the Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee. One of the officers signing an Officers’ Certificate given pursuant to Section 1004 shall be the principal executive, financial or accounting officer of the Company.

“Opinion of Counsel” means a written opinion of counsel who shall be acceptable to the Trustee.

“Original Issue Discount Security” means any Security which provides for an amount less than the principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 502.

“Outstanding”, when used with respect to Securities, means, as of the date of determination, all Securities theretofore authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, except:

(1) Securities theretofore cancelled by the Trustee or delivered to the Trustee for cancellation;

(2) Securities for whose payment or redemption money in the necessary amount has been theretofore deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent (other than the Company) in trust or set aside and segregated in trust by the Company (if the Company shall act as its own Paying Agent) for the Holders of such Securities; provided that, if such Securities are to be redeemed, notice of such redemption has been duly given pursuant to this Indenture or provision therefor satisfactory to the Trustee has been made;

(3) Securities as to which Defeasance has been effected pursuant to Section 1502; and

(4) Securities which have been paid pursuant to Section 306 or in exchange for or in lieu of which other Securities have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to this Indenture, other than any such Securities in respect of which there shall have been presented to the Trustee proof satisfactory to it that such Securities are held by a bona fide purchaser in whose hands such Securities are valid obligations of the Company;

4

provided, however, that in determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of the Outstanding Securities have given, made or taken any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action hereunder as of any date, (A) the principal amount of an Original Issue Discount Security which shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the amount of the principal thereof which would be due and payable as of such date upon acceleration of the Maturity thereof to such date pursuant to Section 502, (B) if, as of such date, the principal amount payable at the Stated Maturity of a Security is not determinable, the principal amount of such Security which shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the amount as specified or determined as contemplated by Section 301, (C) the principal amount of a Security denominated in one or more foreign currencies or currency units which shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the U.S. dollar equivalent, determined as of such date in the manner provided as contemplated by Section 301, of the principal amount of such Security (or, in the case of a Security described in clause (A) or (B) above, of the amount determined as provided in such clause), and (D) Securities owned by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding, except that, in determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying upon any such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, only Securities which the Trustee knows to be so owned shall be so disregarded. Securities so owned which have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding if the pledgee establishes to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor.

"Paying Agent" means any Person authorized by the Company to pay the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities on behalf of the Company.

"Person" means any individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof.

"Place of Payment," when used with respect to the Securities of any series, means the place or places where the principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities of that series are payable as specified as contemplated by Section 301.

"Predecessor Security" of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under Section 306 in exchange for or in lieu of a mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security.

"Redemption Date," when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the date fixed for such redemption by or pursuant to this Indenture.

"Redemption Price," when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the price at which it is to be redeemed pursuant to this Indenture.

5

"Regular Record Date" for the interest payable on any Interest Payment Date on the Securities of any series means the date specified for that purpose as contemplated by Section 301.

"Securities" has the meaning stated in the first recital of this Indenture and more particularly means any Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture.

"Securities Act" means the Securities Act of 1933 and any statute successor thereto, in each case as amended from time to time.

"Security Register" and "Security Registrar" have the respective meanings specified in Section 305.

"Significant Subsidiary" means, at any date of determination, any Subsidiary that represents 10% or more of the Company's consolidated total assets at the end of the most recent fiscal quarter for which financial information is available or 10% or more of the Company's consolidated net revenues or consolidated operating income for the most recent four quarters for which financial information is available.

"Special Record Date" for the payment of any Defaulted Interest means a date fixed by the Trustee pursuant to Section 307.

"Stated Maturity," when used with respect to any Security or any installment of principal thereof or interest thereon, means the date specified in such Security as the fixed date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal or interest is due and payable.

"Subsidiary" of any Person means (1) a corporation more than 50% of the combined voting power of the outstanding Voting Stock of which is owned, directly or indirectly, by such Person or by one or more other Subsidiaries of such Person or by such Person and one or more Subsidiaries thereof or (2) any other Person (other than a corporation) in which such Person, or one or more other Subsidiaries of such Person or such Person and one or more other Subsidiaries thereof, directly or indirectly, has at least a majority ownership and power to direct the policies, management and affairs thereof.

"Trust Indenture Act" means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as in force at the date as of which this instrument was executed; provided, however, that in the event the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 is amended after such date, "Trust Indenture Act" means, to the extent required by any such amendment, the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as so amended.

"Trustee" means the Person named as the "Trustee" in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor Trustee shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter "Trustee" shall mean or include each Person who is then a Trustee hereunder, and if at any time there is more than one such Person, "Trustee" as used with respect to the Securities of any series shall mean the Trustee with respect to Securities of that series.

"U.S. Government Obligation" has the meaning specified in Section 1504.

6

“Vice President” when used with respect to the Company or the Trustee, means any vice president, whether or not designated by a number or a word or words added before or after the title “vice president”.

“Voting Stock” of any Person means Capital Stock of such Person which ordinarily has voting power for the election of directors (or persons performing similar functions) of such Person, whether at all times or only so long as no senior class of securities has such voting power by reason of any contingency.

SECTION 102. Compliance Certificates and Opinions.

Upon any application or request by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any provision of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee such certificates and opinions as may be required under the Trust Indenture Act. Each such certificate or opinion shall be given in the form of an Officers’ Certificate, if to be given by an officer of the Company, or an Opinion of Counsel, if to be given by counsel, and shall comply with the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act and any other requirements set forth in this Indenture.

Every certificate or opinion with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant provided for in this Indenture shall include:

(1) a statement that each individual signing such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition and the definitions herein relating thereto;

(2) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based;

(3) a statement that, in the opinion of each such individual, he has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and

(4) a statement as to whether, in the opinion of each such individual, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

SECTION 103. Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee.

In any case where several matters are required to be certified by, or covered by an opinion of, any specified Person, it is not necessary that all such matters be certified by, or covered by the opinion of, only one such Person, or that they be so certified or covered by only one document, but one such Person may certify or give an opinion with respect to some matters and one or more other such Persons as to other matters, and any such Person may certify or give an opinion as to such matters in one or several documents.

Any certificate or opinion of an officer of the Company may be based, insofar as it relates to legal matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, counsel, unless such officer knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to the matters upon which his certificate or opinion is based are

7

erroneous. Any such certificate or opinion of counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to factual matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, an officer or officers of the Company stating that the information with respect to such factual matters is in the possession of the Company, unless such counsel knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to such matters are erroneous.

Where any Person is required to make, give or execute two or more applications, requests, consents, certificates, statements, opinions or other instruments under this Indenture, they may, but need not, be consolidated and form one instrument.

SECTION 104. Acts of Holders; Record Dates.

Whenever in this Indenture it is provided that the Holders of a specified percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any or all series may take action (including the making of any demand or request, the giving of any direction, notice, consent or waiver or the taking of any other action) the fact that at the time of taking any such action the Holders of such specified percentage have joined therein may be evidenced (a) by any instrument or any number of instruments of similar tenor executed by Holders in person or by agent or proxy appointed in writing, (b) by the record of the Holders voting in favor thereof at any meeting of Holders duly called and held in accordance with procedures approved by the Trustee, (c) by a combination of such instrument or instruments and any such record of such a meeting of Holders or (d) in the case of Securities evidenced by a Global Security, by any electronic transmission or other message, whether or not in written format, that complies with the Depository’s applicable procedures. Such evidence (and the action embodied therein and evidenced thereby) are herein sometimes referred to as the “Act” of the relevant Holders. Proof of execution of any such instrument or of a writing appointing any such agent or proxy shall be sufficient for any purpose of this Indenture and (subject to Section 601) conclusive in favor of the Trustee and the Company, if made in the manner provided in this Section.

The fact and date of the execution by any Person of any such instrument or writing may be proved by the affidavit of a witness of such execution or by a certificate of a notary public or other officer authorized by law to take acknowledgments of deeds, certifying that the individual signing such instrument or writing acknowledged to him the execution thereof. Where such execution is by a signer acting in a capacity other than his individual capacity, such certificate or affidavit shall also constitute sufficient proof of his authority. The fact and date of the execution of any such instrument or writing, or the authority of the Person executing the same, may also be proved in any other manner that the Trustee deems sufficient.

The ownership of Securities shall be proved by the Security Register.

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act of the Holder of any Security shall bind every future Holder of the same Security and the Holder of every Security issued upon the registration of transfer thereof or in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof in respect of anything done, omitted or suffered to be done by the Trustee or the Company in reliance thereon, whether or not notation of such action is made upon such Security.

8

The Company may set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the Holders of Outstanding Securities of any series entitled to give, make or take any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided or permitted by this Indenture to be given, made or taken by Holders of Securities of such series, provided that the Company may not set a record date for, and the provisions of this paragraph shall not apply with respect to, the giving or making of any notice, declaration, request or direction referred to in the next paragraph. If any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Holders of Outstanding Securities of the relevant series on such record date, and no other Holders, shall be entitled to take the relevant action, whether or not such Holders remain Holders after such record date; provided that no such action shall be effective hereunder unless taken on or prior to the applicable Expiration Date by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of such series on such record date. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to prevent the Company from setting a new record date for any action for which a record date has previously been set pursuant to this paragraph (whereupon the record date previously set shall automatically and with no action by any Person be cancelled and of no effect), and nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to render ineffective any action taken by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of the relevant series on the date such action is taken. Promptly after any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Company, at its own expense, shall cause notice of such record date, the proposed action by Holders and the applicable Expiration Date to be given to the Trustee in writing and to each Holder of Securities of the relevant series in the manner set forth in Section 106.

The Trustee may set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the Holders of Outstanding Securities of any series entitled to join in the giving or making of (i) any Notice of Default, (ii) any declaration of acceleration referred to in Section 502, (iii) any request to institute proceedings referred to in Section 507(2) or (iv) any direction referred to in Section 512, in each case with respect to Securities of such series. If any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Holders of Outstanding Securities of such series on such record date, and no other Holders, shall be entitled to join in such notice, declaration, request or direction, whether or not such Holders remain Holders after such record date; provided that no such action shall be effective hereunder unless taken on or prior to the applicable Expiration Date by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of such series on such record date. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to prevent the Trustee from setting a new record date for any action for which a record date has previously been set pursuant to this paragraph (whereupon the record date previously set shall automatically and with no action by any Person be cancelled and of no effect), and nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to render ineffective any action taken by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of the relevant series on the date such action is taken. Promptly after any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Trustee, at the Company's expense, shall cause notice of such record date, the proposed action by Holders and the applicable Expiration Date to be given to the Company in writing and to each Holder of Securities of the relevant series in the manner set forth in Section 106.

With respect to any record date set pursuant to this Section, the party hereto which sets such record dates may designate any day as the "Expiration Date" and from time to time may change the Expiration Date to any earlier or later day; provided that no such change shall be effective unless notice of the proposed new Expiration Date is given to the other party hereto in

writing, and to each Holder of Securities of the relevant series in the manner set forth in Section 106, on or prior to the existing Expiration Date. If an Expiration Date is not designated with respect to any record date set pursuant to this Section, the party hereto which set such record date shall be deemed to have initially designated the 180th day after such record date as the Expiration Date with respect thereto, subject to its right to change the Expiration Date as provided in this paragraph. Notwithstanding the foregoing, no Expiration Date shall be later than the 180th day after the applicable record date.

Without limiting the foregoing, a Holder entitled hereunder to take any action hereunder with regard to any particular Security may do so with regard to all or any part of the principal amount of such Security or by one or more duly appointed agents each of which may do so pursuant to such appointment with regard to all or any part of such principal amount.

SECTION 105. Notices, Etc., to Trustee and Company.

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or Act of Holders or other document provided or permitted by this Indenture to be made upon, given or furnished to, or filed with:

(1) the Trustee by any Holder or by the Company shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if made, given, furnished or filed in writing in the English language to or with the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office, Attention: Corporate Trust Department; or

(2) the Company by the Trustee or by any Holder shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing in the English language and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, addressed to it at the address of its principal office specified in the first paragraph of this instrument or at any other address previously furnished in writing to the Trustee by the Company.

SECTION 106. Notice to Holders; Waiver.

Where this Indenture provides for notice to Holders of any event, such notice shall be sufficiently given (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to each Holder affected by such event, at his address as it appears in the Security Register, not later than the latest date (if any), and not earlier than the earliest date (if any), prescribed for the giving of such notice. In any case where notice to Holders is given by mail, neither the failure to mail such notice, nor any defect in any notice so mailed, to any particular Holder shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Holders. Where this Indenture provides for notice in any manner, such notice may be waived in writing by the Person entitled to receive such notice, either before or after the event, and such waiver shall be the equivalent of such notice. Waivers of notice by Holders shall be filed with the Trustee, but such filing shall not be a condition precedent to the validity of any action taken in reliance upon such waiver.

In case by reason of the suspension of regular mail service or by reason of any other cause it shall be impracticable to give such notice by mail, then such notification as shall be made with the approval of the Trustee shall constitute a sufficient notification for every purpose hereunder.

SECTION 107. Conflict with Trust Indenture Act.

If any provision hereof limits, qualifies or conflicts with a provision of the Trust Indenture Act which is required under such Act to be a part of and govern this Indenture, the latter provision shall control. If any provision of this Indenture modifies or excludes any provision of the Trust Indenture Act which may be so modified or excluded, the latter provision shall be deemed to apply to this Indenture as so modified or to be excluded, as the case may be.

SECTION 108. Effect of Headings And Table of Contents.

The Article and Section headings herein and the Table of Contents are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

SECTION 109. Successors and Assigns.

All covenants and agreements in this Indenture by the Company shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

SECTION 110. Separability Clause.

In case any provision in this Indenture or the Securities shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforce ability of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

SECTION 111. Benefits of Indenture.

Nothing in this Indenture or the Securities express or implied, shall give to any Person, other than the parties hereto and their successors hereunder and the Holders, any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under this Indenture.

SECTION 112. Governing Law.

This Indenture and the Securities shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of the State of New York.

SECTION 113. Legal Holidays.

In any case where any Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, purchase date or Stated Maturity of any Security shall not be a Business Day at any Place of Payment, then (notwithstanding any other provision of this Indenture or of the Securities (other than a provision of any Security which specifically states that such provision shall apply in lieu of this Section)) payment of interest or principal (and premium, if any) need not be made at such Place of Payment on such date, but may be made on the next succeeding Business Day at such Place of Payment with the same force and effect as if made on the Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date or purchase date, or at the Stated Maturity.

ARTICLE TWO SECURITY FORMS

SECTION 201. Forms Generally.

The Securities of each series shall be in substantially the form set forth in this Article, or in such other form as shall be established by or pursuant to a Board Resolution or in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in each case with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as are required or permitted by this Indenture, and may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification and such legends or endorsements placed thereon as may be required to comply with the rules of any securities exchange or Depository therefor or as may, consistently herewith, be determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution thereof. If the form of Securities of any series is established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Company Order contemplated by Section 303 for the authentication and delivery of such Securities.

The definitive Securities shall be printed, lithographed or engraved on steel engraved borders or may be produced in any other manner, all as determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities.

SECTION 202. Form of face of Security.

[Insert any legend required by the Internal Revenue Code and the regulations thereunder.]

Evolution Petroleum Corporation

No.

\$

Evolution Petroleum Corporation, a corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of Nevada (herein called the "Company," which term includes any successor Person under the Indenture hereinafter referred to), for value received, hereby promises to pay to _____, or registered assigns, the principal sum of _____ Dollars on _____ [if the Security is to bear interest prior to Maturity, insert —, and to pay interest thereon from _____ or from the most recent Interest Payment Date to which interest has been paid or duly provided for, semi-annually on _____ and _____ in each year, commencing _____, at the rate of _____ % per annum, until the principal hereof is paid or made available for payment, provided that any principal and premium, and any such installment of interest, which is overdue shall bear interest at the rate of _____ % per annum (to the extent that the payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable), from the dates such amounts are due until they are paid or made available for payment, and such interest shall be payable on demand. The interest so payable, and punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date will, as provided in such Indenture, be paid to the Person in whose name this Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest, which shall be the _____ or _____ (whether or not a Business Day), as the case may be, next preceding such Interest Payment Date. Any such interest not so punctually paid or duly provided for will forthwith cease to be payable to the Holder on such Regular Record Date and

may either be paid to the Person in whose name this Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest to be fixed by the Trustee, notice whereof shall be given to Holders of Securities of this series not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date, or be paid at any time in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which the Securities of this series may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, all as more fully provided in said Indenture].

[If the Security is not to bear interest prior to Maturity, insert — The principal of this Security shall not bear interest except in the case of a default in payment of principal upon acceleration, upon redemption or at Stated Maturity and in such case the overdue principal and any overdue premium shall bear interest at the rate of % per annum (to the extent that the payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable), from the dates such amounts are due until they are paid or made available for payment. Interest on any overdue principal or premium shall be payable on demand. Any such interest on overdue principal or premium which is not paid on demand shall bear interest at the rate of % per annum (to the extent that the payment of such interest on interest shall be legally enforceable), from the date of such demand until the amount so demanded is paid or made available for payment. Interest on any overdue interest shall be payable on demand.]

Payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and [if applicable, insert — any such] interest on this Security will be made at the office or agency of the Company maintained for that purpose in , in such coin or currency of the United States of America as at the time of payment is legal tender for payment of public and private debts; provided, however, that at the option of the Company payment of interest may be made by check mailed to the address of the Person entitled thereto as such address shall appear in the Security Register.

Reference is hereby made to the further provisions of this Security set forth on the reverse hereof, which further provisions shall for all purposes have the same effect as if set forth at this place.

Unless the certificate of authentication hereon has been executed by the Trustee referred to on the reverse hereof by manual signature, this Security shall not be entitled to any benefit under the Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this instrument to be duly executed under its corporate seal.

Dated:

Evolution Petroleum Corporation

By _____

Attest:

SECTION 203. Form of Reverse of Security.

This Security is one of a duly authorized issue of securities of the Company (herein called the "Securities"), issued and to be issued in one or more series under an Indenture, dated as of , 200 (herein called the "Indenture", which term shall have the meaning assigned to it in such instrument), among the Company and , as Trustee (herein called the "Trustee", which term includes any successor trustee under the Indenture), and reference is hereby made to the Indenture for a statement of the respective rights, limitations of rights, duties and immunities thereunder of the Company, the Trustee and the Holders of the Securities and of the terms upon which the Securities are, and are to be, authenticated and delivered. This Security is one of the series designated on the face hereof [if applicable, insert — , limited in aggregate principal amount to \$].

[If applicable, insert — The Securities of this series are subject to redemption upon not less than 30 days' notice by mail, [if applicable, insert — (1) on in any year commencing with the year and ending with the year through operation of the sinking fund for this series at a Redemption Price equal to 100% of the principal amount, and (2)] at any time [if applicable, insert — on or after , 20], as a whole or in part, at the election of the Company, at the following Redemption Prices (expressed as percentages of the principal amount): If redeemed [if applicable, insert — on or before , %, and if redeemed] during the 12-month period beginning of the years indicated,

| Year | Redemption Price | Year | Redemption Price |
|------|------------------|------|------------------|
| | | | |

and thereafter at a Redemption Price equal to % of the principal amount, together in the case of any such redemption [if applicable, insert — (whether through operation of the sinking fund or otherwise)] with accrued interest to the Redemption Date, but interest installments whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to such Redemption Date will be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, of record at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates referred to on the face hereof, all as provided in the Indenture.]

[If applicable, insert — The Securities of this series are subject to redemption upon not less than 30 days' notice by mail, (1) on in any year commencing with the year and ending with the year through operation of the sinking fund for this series at the Redemption Prices for redemption through operation of the sinking fund (expressed as percentages of the principal amount) set forth in the table below, and (2) at any time [if applicable, insert — on or after], as a whole or in part, at the election of the Company, at the Redemption Prices for redemption otherwise than through operation of the

sinking fund (expressed as percentages of the principal amount) set forth in the table below: If redeemed during the 12-month period beginning of the years indicated,

| Year | Redemption Price for Redemption Through Operation of the Sinking Fund | Redemption Price for Redemption Otherwise than Through Operation of the Sinking Fund |
|------|---|--|
| | | |
| | | |

14

and thereafter at a Redemption Price equal to % of the principal amount, together in the case of any such redemption (whether through operation of the sinking fund or otherwise) with accrued interest to the Redemption Date, but interest installments whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to such Redemption Date will be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, of record at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates referred to on the face hereof, all as provided in the Indenture.]

[If applicable, insert — Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company may not, prior to , redeem any Securities of this series as contemplated by [if applicable, insert — clause (2) of] the preceding paragraph as a part of, or in anticipation of, any refunding operation by the application, directly or indirectly, of moneys borrowed having an interest cost to the Company (calculated in accordance with generally accepted financial practice) of less than % per annum.]

[If applicable, insert — The sinking fund for this series provides for the redemption on in each year beginning with the year and ending with the year of [if applicable, insert — not less than \$ (“mandatory sinking fund”) and not more than] \$ aggregate principal amount of Securities of this series. Securities of this series acquired or redeemed by the Company otherwise than through [if applicable, insert — mandatory] sinking fund payments may be credited against subsequent [if applicable, insert — mandatory] sinking fund payments otherwise required to be made [if applicable, insert — , in the inverse order in which they become due].]

[If the Security is subject to redemption of any kind, insert — In the event of redemption of this Security in part only, a new Security or Securities of this series and of like tenor for the unredeemed portion hereof will be issued in the name of the Holder hereof upon the cancellation hereof.]

[If the Security is subject to conversion, insert — Subject to the provisions of the Indenture, each Holder has the right to convert the principal amount of this Security into fully paid and nonassessable shares of Common Stock of the Company at the initial conversion price per share of Common Stock of \$ (or \$ in principal amount of Securities for each such share of Common Stock), or at the adjusted conversion price then in effect, if adjustment has been made as provided in the Indenture, upon surrender of the Security to the Conversion Agent, together with a fully executed notice in substantially the form attached hereto and, if required by the Indenture, an amount equal to accrued interest payable on this Security.]

[If applicable, insert — The Indenture contains provisions for Defeasance at any time of [the entire indebtedness of this Security] [or] [certain restrictive covenants and Events of Default with respect to this Security] [, in each case] upon compliance with certain conditions set forth in the Indenture.]

[If the Security is not an Original Issue Discount Security, insert — If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of this series shall occur and be continuing, the principal of the Securities of this series may be declared due and payable in the manner and with the effect provided in the Indenture.]

15

[If the Security is an Original Issue Discount Security, insert — If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of this series shall occur and be continuing, an amount of principal of the Securities of this series may be declared due and payable in the manner and with the effect provided in the Indenture. Such amount shall be equal to — insert formula for determining the amount. Upon payment (i) of the amount of principal so declared due and payable and (ii) of interest on any overdue principal, premium and interest (in each case to the extent that the payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable), all of the Company’s obligations in respect of the payment of the principal of and premium and interest, if any, on the Securities of this series shall terminate.]

The Indenture permits, with certain exceptions as therein provided, the amendment thereof and the modification of the rights and obligations of the Company and the rights of the Holders of the Securities of each series to be affected under the Indenture at any time by the Company and the Trustee with the consent of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Securities at the time Outstanding of each series to be affected. The Indenture also contains provisions permitting the Holders of specified percentages in principal amount of the Securities of each series at the time Outstanding, on behalf of the Holders of all Securities of such series, to waive compliance by the Company with certain provisions of the Indenture and certain past defaults under the Indenture and their consequences. Any such consent or waiver by the Holder of this Security shall be conclusive and binding upon such Holder and upon all future Holders of this Security and of any Security issued upon the registration of transfer hereof or in exchange herefor or in lieu hereof, whether or not notation of such consent or waiver is made upon this Security.

As provided in and subject to the provisions of the Indenture, the Holder of this Security shall not have the right to institute any proceeding with respect to the Indenture or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee or for any other remedy thereunder, unless such Holder shall have previously given the Trustee written notice of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Securities of this series, the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Securities of this series at the time Outstanding shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default as Trustee and offered the Trustee reasonable indemnity, and the Trustee shall not have received from the Holders of a majority in principal amount of Securities of this series at the time Outstanding a direction inconsistent with such request, and shall have failed to institute any such proceeding, for 60 days after receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity. The foregoing shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Holder of this Security for the enforcement of any payment of principal hereof or any premium or interest hereon on or after the respective due dates expressed herein.

No reference herein to the Indenture and no provision of this Security or of the Indenture shall alter or impair the obligation of the Company, which is absolute and unconditional, to pay the principal of and any premium and interest on this Security at the times, place and rate, and in the coin or currency,

herein prescribed.

As provided in the Indenture and subject to certain limitations therein set forth, the transfer of this Security is registrable in the Security Register, upon surrender of this Security for registration of transfer at the office or agency of the Company in any place where the principal of and any premium and interest on this Security are payable, duly endorsed by, or accompanied by

a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Security Registrar duly executed by, the Holder hereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing, and thereupon one or more new Securities of this series and of like tenor, of authorized denominations and for the same aggregate principal amount, will be issued to the designated transferee or transferees.

The Securities of this series are issuable only in registered form without coupons in denominations of \$ _____ and any integral multiple thereof. As provided in the Indenture and subject to certain limitations therein set forth, Securities of this series are exchangeable for a like aggregate principal amount of Securities of this series and of like tenor of a different authorized denomination, as requested by the Holder surrendering the same.

No service charge shall be made for any such registration of transfer or exchange, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge payable in connection therewith.

Prior to due presentment of this Security for registration of transfer, the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee may treat the Person in whose name this Security is registered as the owner hereof for all purposes, whether or not this Security be overdue, and neither the Company, the Trustee nor any such agent shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

All terms used in this Security which are defined in the Indenture shall have the meanings assigned to them in the Indenture.

SECTION 204. [Intentionally Omitted]

SECTION 205. Form of Legend for Global Securities.

Unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301 for the Securities evidenced thereby, every Global Security authenticated and delivered hereunder shall bear a legend in substantially the following form:

THIS SECURITY IS A GLOBAL SECURITY WITHIN THE MEANING OF THE INDENTURE HEREINAFTER REFERRED TO AND IS REGISTERED IN THE NAME OF A DEPOSITARY OR A NOMINEE THEREOF. THIS SECURITY MAY NOT BE EXCHANGED IN WHOLE OR IN PART FOR A SECURITY REGISTERED, AND NO TRANSFER OF THIS SECURITY IN WHOLE OR IN PART MAY BE REGISTERED, IN THE NAME OF ANY PERSON OTHER THAN SUCH DEPOSITARY OR A NOMINEE THEREOF, EXCEPT IN THE LIMITED CIRCUMSTANCES DESCRIBED IN THE INDENTURE.

SECTION 206. Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication.

The Trustee's certificates of authentication shall be in substantially the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

As Trustee

By _____
Authorized Officer

SECTION 207. Form of Conversion Notice.

Each convertible Security shall have attached thereto, or set forth on the reverse of the Security, a notice of conversion in substantially the following form:

Conversion Notice

To: Evolution Petroleum Corporation

The undersigned owner of this Security hereby: (i) irrevocably exercises the option to convert this Security, or the portion hereof below designated, for shares of Common Stock of Evolution Petroleum Corporation in accordance with the terms of the Indenture referred to in this Security and (ii) directs that such shares of Common Stock deliverable upon the conversion, together with any check in payment for fractional shares and any Security(ies) representing any unconverted principal amount hereof, be issued and delivered to the registered holder hereof unless a different name has been indicated below. If shares are to be delivered registered in the name of a person other than the undersigned, the undersigned will pay all transfer taxes payable with respect thereto. Any amount required to be paid by the undersigned on account of interest accompanies this Security.

Dated _____
Signature _____

Fill in for registration of shares if to be delivered, and of Securities if to be issued, otherwise than to and in the name of the registered holder.

Social Security or other
Taxpayer Identification Number

(Name)

(Please print name and address)

Principal amount to be converted: (if less than all)
\$ _____

Signature Guarantee*

* Participant in a recognized Signature Guarantee Medallion Program (or other signature acceptable to the Trustee).

ARTICLE THREE
THE SECURITIES

SECTION 301. Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series.

The aggregate principal amount of Securities which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited.

The Securities may be issued in one or more series. There shall be established in or pursuant to a Board Resolution and, subject to Section 303, set forth, or determined in the manner provided, in an Officers' Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, prior to the issuance of Securities of any series,

(1) the title of the Securities of the series (which shall distinguish the Securities of the series from Securities of any other series);

(2) [Intentionally Omitted]

(3) any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of the series which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of the series pursuant to Section 304, 305, 306, 906 or 1107 and except for any Securities which, pursuant to Section 303, are deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder);

(4) the Person to whom any interest on a Security of the series shall be payable, if other than the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest;

(5) the date or dates on which the principal of any Securities of the series is payable;

(6) the rate or rates at which any Securities of the series shall bear interest, if any, the date or dates from which any such interest shall accrue, the Interest Payment Dates on which any such interest shall be payable and the Regular Record Date for any such interest payable on any Interest Payment Date;

(7) the place or places where the principal of and any premium and interest on any Securities of the series shall be payable;

(8) the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which any Securities of the series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company and, if other than by a Board Resolution, the manner in which any election by the Company to redeem the Securities shall be evidenced;

(9) the obligation, if any, of the Company to redeem or purchase any Securities of the series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provisions or at the option of the Holder thereof and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which any Securities of the series shall be redeemed or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;

(10) if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof, the denominations in which any Securities of the series shall be issuable;

(11) if the amount of principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of the series may be determined with reference to an index or pursuant to a formula, the manner in which such amounts shall be determined;

(12) if other than the currency of the United States of America, the currency, currencies or currency units in which the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of the series shall be payable and the manner of determining the equivalent thereof in the currency of the United States of America for any purpose, including for purposes of the definition of "Outstanding" in Section 101;

(13) if the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of the series is to be payable, at the election of the Company or the Holder thereof, in one or more currencies or currency units other than that or those in which such Securities are stated to be payable, the currency, currencies or currency units in which the principal of or any premium or interest on such Securities as to which such election is made shall be payable, the periods within which and the terms and conditions upon which such election is to be made and the amount so payable (or the manner in which such amount shall be determined);

(14) if other than the entire principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of any Securities of the series which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 502;

(15) if the principal amount payable at the Stated Maturity of any Securities of the series will not be determinable as of any one or more dates prior to the Stated Maturity, the amount which shall be deemed to be the principal amount of such Securities as of any such date for any purpose thereunder or hereunder, including the principal amount thereof which shall be due and payable upon any Maturity other than the Stated Maturity or which shall be deemed to be Outstanding as of any date prior to the Stated Maturity (or, in any such case, the manner in which such amount deemed to be the principal amount shall be determined);

20

(16) if applicable, that the Securities of the series, in whole or any specified part, shall be defeasible pursuant to Section 1502 or Section 1503 or both such Sections and, if other than by a Board Resolution, the manner in which any election by the Company to defease such Securities shall be evidenced;

(17) if applicable, that any Securities of the series shall be issuable in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities and, in such case, the respective Depositories for such Global Securities, the form of any legend or legends which shall be borne by any such Global Security in addition to or in lieu of that set forth in Section 205 and any circumstances in addition to or in lieu of those set forth in clause (2) of the last paragraph of Section 305 in which any such Global Security may be exchanged in whole or in part for Securities registered, and any transfer of such Global Security in whole or in part may be registered, in the name or names of Persons other than the Depository for such Global Security or a nominee thereof;

(18) any addition to or change in the Events of Default which applies to any Securities of the series and any change in the right of the Trustee or the requisite Holders of such Securities to declare the principal amount thereof due and payable pursuant to Section 502;

(19) any addition to or change in the covenants set forth in Article Ten which applies to Securities of the series;

(20) whether the Securities of the series will be convertible into Common Stock (or cash in lieu thereof) and, if so, the terms and conditions upon which such conversion will be effected; and

(21) any other terms of the series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture, except as permitted by Section 901(5)).

All Securities of any one series shall be substantially identical except as to denomination and except as may otherwise be provided in or pursuant to the Board Resolution referred to above and (subject to Section 303) set forth, or determined in the manner provided, in the Officers' Certificate referred to above or in any such indenture supplemental hereto.

If any of the terms of the series are established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Officers' Certificate setting forth the terms of the series.

SECTION 302. Denominations.

The Securities of each series shall be issuable only in registered form without coupons and only in such denominations as shall be specified as contemplated by Section 301. In the absence of any such specified denomination with respect to the Securities of any series, the Securities of such series shall be issuable in denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof.

21

SECTION 303. Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating.

The Securities shall be executed on behalf of the Company by its Chairman of the Board of Directors, its President or one of its Vice Presidents. If its corporate seal is reproduced thereon, then it shall be attested by its Secretary or one of its Assistant Secretaries. The signature of any of these officers on the Securities may be manual or facsimile.

Securities bearing the manual or facsimile signatures of individuals who were at any time the proper officers of the Company shall bind the Company, notwithstanding that such individuals or any of them have ceased to hold such offices prior to the authentication and delivery of such Securities or did not hold such offices at the date of such Securities.

At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities of any series executed by the Company, together with a Company Order for the authentication and delivery of such Securities, and the Trustee in accordance with the Company Order shall authenticate and deliver such Securities. If the form or terms of the Securities of the series have been established by or pursuant to one or more Board

Resolutions as permitted by Sections 201 and 301, in authenticating such Securities, and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 601) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating,

(1) if the form of such Securities has been established by or pursuant to Board Resolution as permitted by Section 201, that such form has been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture;

(2) if the terms of such Securities have been established by or pursuant to Board Resolution as permitted by Section 301, that such terms have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture; and

(3) that such Securities, when authenticated and delivered by the Trustee and issued by the Company in the manner and subject to any conditions specified in such Opinion of Counsel, will constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company, enforceable in accordance with their terms, subject to bankruptcy, insolvency, fraudulent transfer, reorganization, moratorium and similar laws of general applicability relating to or affecting creditors' rights and to general equity principles.

If such form or terms have been so established, the Trustee shall not be required to authenticate such Securities if the issue of such Securities pursuant to this Indenture will affect the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture or otherwise in a manner which is not reasonably acceptable to the Trustee.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 301 and of the preceding paragraph, if all Securities of a series are not to be originally issued at one time, it shall not be necessary to deliver the Officers' Certificate otherwise required pursuant to Section 301 or the Company Order and Opinion of Counsel otherwise required pursuant to such preceding paragraph at or prior to the authentication of each Security of such series if such documents are delivered at or prior to the authentication upon original issuance of the first Security of such series to be issued.

22

Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication.

No Security shall be entitled to any benefit under this Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose unless there appears on such Security a certificate of authentication substantially in the form provided for herein executed by the Trustee by manual signature, and such certificate upon any Security shall be conclusive evidence, and the only evidence, that such Security has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if any Security shall have been authenticated and delivered hereunder but never issued and sold by the Company, and the Company shall deliver such Security to the Trustee for cancellation as provided in Section 309, for all purposes of this Indenture such Security shall be deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder and shall never be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture.

SECTION 304. Temporary Securities.

Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and upon Company Order the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities which are printed, lithographed, typewritten, mimeographed or otherwise produced, in any authorized denomination, substantially of the tenor of the definitive Securities and with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as the officers executing such Securities may determine, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities.

If temporary Securities of any series are issued, the Company will cause definitive Securities of that series to be prepared without unreasonable delay. After the preparation of definitive Securities of such series, the temporary Securities of such series shall be exchangeable for definitive Securities of such series upon surrender of the temporary Securities of such series at the office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment for that series, without charge to the Holder. Upon surrender for cancellation of any one or more temporary Securities of any series, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor one or more definitive Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of like tenor and aggregate principal amount. Until so exchanged, the temporary Securities of any series shall in all respects be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such series and tenor.

SECTION 305. Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange.

The Company shall cause to be kept at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee a register (the register maintained in such office and in any other office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment being herein sometimes collectively referred to as the "Security Register") in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall provide for the registration of Securities and of transfers of Securities. The Trustee is hereby appointed "Security Registrar" for the purpose of registering Securities and transfers of Securities as herein provided.

23

Upon surrender for registration of transfer of any Security of a series at the office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment for that series, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in the name of the designated transferee or transferees, one or more new Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of like tenor and aggregate principal amount.

At the option of the Holder, Securities of any series may be exchanged for other Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of like tenor and aggregate principal amount, upon surrender of the Securities to be exchanged at such office or agency. Whenever any Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, the Securities which the Holder making the exchange is entitled to receive.

All Securities issued upon any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities shall be the valid obligations of the Company, evidencing the same debt, and entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture, as the Securities surrendered upon such registration of transfer or exchange.

Every Security presented or surrendered for registration of transfer or for exchange shall (if so required by the Company or the Trustee) be duly endorsed, or be accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Security Registrar duly executed, by the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing.

No service charge shall be made for any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 304, 906, 1107 or otherwise not involving any transfer.

If the Securities of any series (or of any series and specified tenor) are to be redeemed in part, the Company shall not be required (A) to issue, register the transfer of or exchange any Securities of that series (or of that series and specified tenor, as the case may be) during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of the mailing of a notice of redemption of any such Securities selected for redemption under Section 1103 and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, or (B) to register the transfer of or exchange any Security so selected for redemption in whole or in part, except the unredeemed portion of any Security being redeemed in part.

The provisions of clauses (1), (2), (3) and (4) below shall apply only to Global Securities:

(1) Each Global Security authenticated under this Indenture shall be registered in the name of the Depository designated for such Global Security or a nominee thereof and delivered to such Depository or a nominee thereof or custodian therefor, and each such Global Security shall constitute a single Security for all purposes of this Indenture.

(2) Notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture, no Global Security may be exchanged in whole or in part for Securities registered, and no transfer of a Global Security in whole or in part may be registered, in the name of any Person other than the Depository for such Global Security or a nominee thereof unless (A) such

24

Depository (i) has notified the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depository for such Global Security or (ii) has ceased to be a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act, and in either case the Company fails to appoint a successor Depository within 90 days, (B) there shall have occurred and be continuing an Event of Default with respect to such Global Security and the Depository shall have notified the Trustee of its decision to exchange such Global Security for Securities in certificated form or (C) there shall exist such circumstances, if any, in addition to or in lieu of the foregoing as have been specified for this purpose as contemplated by Section 301.

(3) Subject to clause (2) above, any exchange of a Global Security for other Securities may be made in whole or in part, and all Securities issued in exchange for a Global Security or any portion thereof shall be registered in such names as the Depository for such Global Security shall direct.

(4) Every Security authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for or in lieu of, a Global Security or any portion thereof, whether pursuant to this Section, Section 304, 306, 906 or 1107 or otherwise, shall be authenticated and delivered in the form of, and shall be, a Global Security, unless such Security is registered in the name of a Person other than the Depository for such Global Security or a nominee thereof.

SECTION 306. Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities.

If any mutilated Security is surrendered to the Trustee, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a new Security of the same series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

If there shall be delivered to the Company and the Trustee (i) evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Security and (ii) such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them and any agent of either of them harmless from any loss that any of them may suffer if a Security is replaced, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Trustee that such Security has been acquired by a bona fide purchaser, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in lieu of any such destroyed, lost or stolen Security, a new Security of the same series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

In case any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security has become or is about to become due and payable or is to be converted, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new Security, pay or authorize the conversion of such Security (without surrender thereof save in the case of a mutilated Security).

Upon the issuance of any new Security under this Section, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith.

25

Every new Security of any series issued pursuant to this Section in lieu of any destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall constitute an original additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of that series duly issued hereunder.

The provisions of this Section are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement, payment or conversion of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities.

SECTION 307. Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved.

Except as otherwise provided as contemplated by Section 301 with respect to any series of Securities, interest on any Security which is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date shall be paid to the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest.

Any interest on any Security of any series which is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date (herein called "Defaulted Interest") shall forthwith cease to be payable to the Holder on the relevant Regular Record Date by virtue of having been such Holder, and such Defaulted Interest may be paid by the Company, at its election in each case, as provided in clause (1) or (2) below:

(1) The Company may elect to make payment of any Defaulted Interest to the Persons in whose names the Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner. The Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each Security of such series and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this clause provided. Thereupon the Trustee shall fix a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall be not more than 15 days and not less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the proposed payment. The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company of such Special Record Date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor to be given to each Holder of Securities of such series in the manner set forth in Section 106, not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor having been so mailed, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose names the Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on such Special Record Date and shall no longer be payable pursuant to the following clause (2).

26

(2) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on the Securities of any series in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Securities may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this clause, such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee.

Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section, each Security delivered under this Indenture upon registration of transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, which were carried by such other Security.

SECTION 308. Persons Deemed Owners.

Prior to due presentment of a Security for registration of transfer, the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee may treat the Person in whose name such Security is registered as the owner of such Security for the purpose of receiving payment of principal of and any premium and (subject to Section 307) any interest on such Security and for all other purposes whatsoever, whether or not such Security be overdue, and neither the Company, the Trustee nor any agent of the Company or the Trustee shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

SECTION 309. Cancellation.

All Securities surrendered for payment, redemption, purchase, registration of transfer or exchange or for credit against any sinking fund payment shall, if surrendered to any Person other than the Trustee, be delivered to the Trustee and shall be promptly cancelled by it. The Company may at any time deliver to the Trustee for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated and delivered hereunder which the Company may have acquired in any manner whatsoever, and may deliver to the Trustee (or to any other Person for delivery to the Trustee) for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated hereunder which the Company has not issued and sold, and all Securities so delivered shall be promptly cancelled by the Trustee. No Securities shall be authenticated in lieu of or in exchange for any Securities cancelled as provided in this Section, except as expressly permitted by this Indenture. All cancelled Securities held by the Trustee shall be disposed of as directed by a Company Order.

SECTION 310. Computation of Interest.

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301 for Securities of any series, interest on the Securities of each series shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

27

ARTICLE FOUR SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE

SECTION 401. Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture.

This Indenture shall upon Company Request cease to be of further effect with respect to the Securities of any series, and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, when

(1) either

(A) all Securities of such series theretofore authenticated and delivered (other than (i) Securities of such series which have been destroyed, lost or stolen and which have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 306 and (ii) Securities of such series for whose payment money has theretofore been deposited in trust or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereafter repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in Section 1003) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or

(B) all such Securities of such series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation

(i) have become due and payable, or

(ii) will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year, or

(iii) are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption by the Trustee in the name, and at the expense, of the Company,

and the Company, in the case of (i), (ii) or (iii) above, has irrevocably deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust for the purpose money in an amount sufficient, without consideration of any reinvestment of interest, to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, for principal and any premium and interest to the date of such deposit (in the case of Securities which have become due and payable) or to the Stated Maturity or Redemption Date, as the case may be;

(2) the Company has paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company with respect to the Securities of such series; and

(3) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series have been complied with.

Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, the obligations of the Company to the Trustee under Section 607, any surviving rights of conversion, the obligations of the Trustee to any Authenticating Agent under Section 614 and, if money shall have been deposited with the Trustee pursuant to subclause (B) of clause (1) of this Section, the obligations of the Trustee under Section 402 and the last paragraph of Section 1003 shall survive.

SECTION 402. Application of Trust Money.

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 1003, all money deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 401 shall be held in trust and applied by it, in accordance with the provisions of the Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Persons entitled thereto, of the principal and any premium and interest for whose payment such money has been deposited with the Trustee.

ARTICLE FIVE REMEDIES

SECTION 501. Events of Default.

"Event of Default", wherever used herein with respect to Securities of any series, means any one of the following events (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether it shall be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree or order of any court or any order, rule or regulation of any administrative or governmental body):

(1) default in the payment of any interest upon any Security of that series when it becomes due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 30 days; or

(2) default in the payment of the principal of or any premium on any Security of that series at its Maturity; or

(3) default in the deposit of any sinking fund payment, when and as due by the terms of a Security of that series; or

(4) default in the performance, or breach, of any covenant of the Company in Article Eight of this Indenture; or

(5) default in the performance, or breach, of any covenant or warranty of the Company in this Indenture (other than a covenant or warranty a default in whose performance or whose breach is elsewhere in this Section specifically dealt with or which has expressly been included in this Indenture solely for the benefit of series of Securities other than that series), and continuance of such default or breach for a period of 60 days after there has been given, by registered or certified mail, to the Company by the Trustee or to the Company and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series a written notice specifying such default or breach and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a "Notice of Default" hereunder; or

(6) the entry by a court having jurisdiction in the premises of (A) a decree or order for relief in respect of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary in an involuntary case or proceeding under any applicable Federal or State bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or (B) a decree or order adjudging the Company or any Significant Subsidiary a bankrupt or insolvent, or approving as properly filed a petition seeking reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition of or in respect of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary, under any applicable Federal or State law, or appointing a custodian, receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator or other similar official of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary, or of any substantial part of its or their property, or ordering the winding up or liquidation of its or their affairs, and the continuance of any such decree or order for relief or any such other decree or order unstayed and in effect for a period of 60 consecutive days; or

(7) the commencement by the Company or any Significant Subsidiary of a voluntary case or proceeding under any applicable Federal or State bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or of any other case or proceeding to be adjudicated a bankrupt or insolvent, or the consent by it or them to the entry of a decree or order for relief in respect of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary in an involuntary case or proceeding under any applicable Federal or State bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or to the commencement of any bankruptcy or insolvency case or proceeding against it or them, or the filing by it or them of a petition or answer or consent seeking reorganization or relief under any applicable Federal or State law, or the consent by it or them to the filing of such petition or to the appointment of or taking possession by a custodian, receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator or other similar official of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary or of any substantial part of its or their property, or the making by it or them of an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or the admission by it or them in writing of its inability to pay its or their debts generally as they become due, or the taking of corporate action by the Company or any Significant Subsidiary in furtherance of any such action; or

(8) [Intentionally Omitted]

(9) any other Event of Default provided with respect to Securities of that series.

SECTION 502. Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment.

If an Event of Default (other than an Event of Default with respect to the Company specified in Section 501(6) or 501(7)) with respect to Securities of any series at the time Outstanding occurs and is continuing, then in every such case the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series may declare the principal amount of all the Securities of that series (or, if any Securities of that series are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount of such Securities as may be specified by the terms thereof) to be due and payable immediately, by a notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by Holders), and upon any such declaration such principal amount (or specified amount) shall become immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default with respect to the Company specified in Section 501(6) or 501 (7) with respect to Securities of

30

any series at the time Outstanding occurs, the principal amount of all the Securities of that series (or, if any Securities of that series are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount of such Securities as may be specified by the terms thereof) shall automatically, and without any declaration or other action on the part of the Trustee or any Holder, become immediately due and payable.

At any time after such a declaration of acceleration with respect to Securities of any series has been made and before a judgment or decree for payment of the money due has been obtained by the Trustee as hereinafter in this Article provided, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if

(1) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay

(A) all overdue interest on all Securities of that series,

(B) the principal of (and premium, if any, on) any Securities of that series which have become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration and any interest thereon at the rate or rates prescribed therefore in such Securities,

(C) to the extent that payment of such interest is lawful, interest upon overdue interest at the rate or rates prescribed therefore in such Securities, and

(D) all sums paid or advanced by the Trustee hereunder and the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel;

and

(2) all Events of Default with respect to Securities of that series, other than the non-payment of the principal of Securities of that series which has become due solely by such declaration of acceleration, have been cured or waived as provided in Section 513.

No such rescission shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

SECTION 503. Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee.

The Company covenants that if

(1) default is made in the payment of any interest on any Security when such interest becomes due and payable and such default continues for a period of 30 days, or

(2) default is made in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any Security at the Maturity thereof,

31

the Company will, upon demand of the Trustee, pay to it, for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities, the whole amount then due and payable on such Securities for principal and any premium and interest and, to the extent that payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable, interest on any overdue principal and premium and on any overdue interest, at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel.

If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any series occurs and is continuing, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any such rights, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted herein, or to enforce any other proper remedy.

SECTION 504. Trustee May File Proofs of Claim.

In case of any judicial proceeding relative to the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or the property or creditors of the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities, the Trustee shall be entitled and empowered, by intervention in such proceeding or otherwise, to take any and all actions authorized under the Trust Indenture Act in order to have claims of the Holders and the Trustee allowed in any such proceeding. In particular, the Trustee shall be authorized to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims and to distribute the same; and any custodian, receiver, assignee, trustee, liquidator, sequestrator or other similar official in any such judicial proceeding is hereby authorized by each Holder to make such payments to the Trustee and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to the Holders, to pay to the

Trustee any amount due it for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, and any other amounts due the Trustee under Section 607.

No provision of this Indenture shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Holder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities or the rights of any Holder thereof or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Holder in any such proceeding; provided, however, that the Trustee may, on behalf of the Holders, vote for the election of a trustee in bankruptcy or similar official and be a member of a creditors' or other similar committee.

SECTION 505. Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities.

All rights of action and claims under this Indenture or the Securities may be prosecuted and enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of the Securities or the production thereof in any proceeding relating thereto, and any such proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for the payment of the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities in respect of which such judgment has been recovered.

32

SECTION 506. Application of Money Collected.

Any money collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such money on account of principal or any premium or interest, upon presentation of the Securities and the notation thereon of the payment if only partially paid and upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

FIRST: To the payment of all amounts due the Trustee under Section 607;

SECOND: To the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid for principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal and any premium and interest, respectively; and

THIRD: The balance, if any, to the Company or to such other Person as a court of competent jurisdiction shall direct.

SECTION 507. Limitation on Suits.

No Holder of any Security of any series shall have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to this Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless

(1) such Holder has previously given written notice to the Trustee of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Securities of that series;

(2) the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default in its own name as Trustee hereunder;

(3) such Holder or Holders have offered to the Trustee reasonable security or indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request;

(4) the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of security or indemnity has failed to institute any such proceeding; and

(5) no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the Trustee during such 60-day period by the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series;

it being understood and intended that no one or more of such Holders shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of, or by availing of, any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other of such Holders, or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over any other of such Holders or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal and ratable benefit of all of such Holders.

33

SECTION 508. Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest.

Notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture, the Holder of any Security shall have the right, which is absolute and unconditional, to receive payment of the principal of and any premium and (subject to Section 307) interest on such Security on the respective Stated Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption or offer by the Company to purchase the Securities pursuant to the terms of this Indenture, on the Redemption Date or purchase date, as applicable) and, if applicable, to convert such Security in accordance with its terms, and to institute suit for the enforcement of any such right, and such rights shall not be impaired without the consent of such Holder.

SECTION 509. Restoration of Rights and Remedies.

If the Trustee or any Holder has instituted any proceeding to enforce any right or remedy under this Indenture and such proceeding has been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, or has been determined adversely to the Trustee or to such Holder, then and in every such case, subject to any determination in such proceeding, the Company, the Trustee and the Holders shall be restored severally and respectively to their former positions hereunder and thereafter all rights and remedies of the Trustee and the Holders shall continue as though no such proceeding had been instituted.

SECTION 510. Rights and Remedies Cumulative.

Except as otherwise provided with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities in the last paragraph of Section 306, no right or remedy herein conferred upon or reserved to the Trustee or to the Holders is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given hereunder or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy hereunder, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

SECTION 511. Delay or Omission Not Waiver.

No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any Holder of any Securities to exercise any right or remedy accruing upon any Event of Default shall impair any such right or remedy or constitute a waiver of any such Event of Default or an acquiescence therein. Every right and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or to the Holders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as may be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Holders, as the case may be.

SECTION 512. Control by Holders.

The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee, with respect to the Securities of such series, provided that

(1) such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture, and

34

(2) the Trustee may take any other action deemed proper by the Trustee which is not inconsistent with such direction.

SECTION 513. Waiver of Past Defaults.

The Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series may on behalf of the Holders of all the Securities of such series waive any past default hereunder with respect to such series and its consequences, except a default

(1) in the payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Security of such series (including any Security which is required to have been purchased by the Company pursuant to an offer to purchase by the Company made pursuant to the terms of this Indenture), or

(2) in respect of a covenant or provision hereof which under Article Nine cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security of such series.

Upon any such waiver, such default shall cease to exist, and any Event of Default arising there from shall be deemed to have been cured, for every purpose of this Indenture; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or impair any right consequent thereon.

SECTION 514. Undertaking for Costs.

In any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted by it as Trustee, a court may require any party litigant in such suit to file an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and may assess costs against any such party litigant, in the manner and to the extent provided in the Trust Indenture Act; provided, however, that neither this Section nor the Trust Indenture Act shall be deemed to authorize any court to require such an undertaking or to make such an assessment in any suit instituted by the Company.

SECTION 515. Waiver of Usury, Stay or Extension Laws.

The Company covenants (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) that it will not at any time insist upon, or plead, or in any manner whatsoever claim or take the benefit or advantage of, any usury, stay or extension law wherever enacted, now or at any time hereafter in force, which may affect the covenants or the performance of this Indenture; and the Company (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) hereby expressly waives all benefit or advantage of any such law and covenants that it will not hinder, delay or impede the execution of any power herein granted to the Trustee, but will suffer and permit the execution of every such power as though no such law had been enacted.

35

ARTICLE SIX
THE TRUSTEE

SECTION 601. Certain Duties and Responsibilities.

The duties and responsibilities of the Trustee shall be as expressly set forth in this Indenture and as provided by the Trust Indenture Act. Notwithstanding the foregoing, no provision of this Indenture shall require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur any financial liability in the performance of any of its duties hereunder, or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers, if it shall have reasonable grounds for believing that repayment of such funds or adequate indemnity against such risk or liability is not reasonably assured to it. Whether or not therein expressly so provided, every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct or affecting the liability of or affording protection to the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of this Section.

SECTION 602. Notice of Defaults.

If a default occurs hereunder with respect to Securities of any series, the Trustee shall give the Holders of Securities of such series notice of such default as and to the extent provided by the Trust Indenture Act; provided, however, that in the case of any default of the character specified in Section 501(5) with respect to Securities of such series, no such notice to Holders shall be given until at least 30 days after the occurrence thereof. For the purpose of this Section, the term “default” means any event which is, or after notice or lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default with respect to Securities of such series.

SECTION 603. Certain Rights of Trustee.

Subject to the provisions of Section 601:

(1) the Trustee may rely and shall be protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;

(2) any request or direction of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Company Request or Company Order, and any resolution of the Board of Directors shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution;

(3) whenever in the administration of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking, suffering or omitting any action hereunder, the Trustee (unless other evidence be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of bad faith on its part, rely upon an Officers’ Certificate;

(4) the Trustee may consult with counsel and the written advice of such counsel or any Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon;

36

(5) the Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Holders pursuant to this Indenture, unless such Holders shall have offered to the Trustee reasonable security or indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities which might be incurred by it in compliance with such request or direction;

(6) the Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document, but the Trustee, in its discretion, may make such further inquiry or investigation into such facts or matters as it may see fit, and, if the Trustee shall determine to make such further inquiry or investigation, it shall be entitled to examine the books, records and premises of the Company, personally or by agent or attorney; and

(7) the Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder.

SECTION 604. Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities.

The recitals contained herein and in the Securities, except the Trustee’s certificates of authentication, shall be taken as the statements of the Company and neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent assumes any responsibility for their correctness. The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities. Neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent shall be accountable for the use or application by the Company of Securities or the proceeds thereof.

SECTION 605. May Hold Securities.

The Trustee, any Authenticating Agent, any Paying Agent, any Security Registrar or any other agent of the Company, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and, subject to Sections 608 and 613, may otherwise deal with the Company with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee, Authenticating Agent, Paying Agent, Security Registrar or such other agent.

SECTION 606. Money Held in Trust.

Money held by the Trustee in trust hereunder need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest on any money received by it hereunder except as otherwise agreed with the Company.

SECTION 607. Compensation and Reimbursement.

The Company agrees

(1) to pay to the Trustee from time to time reasonable compensation for all services rendered by it hereunder (which compensation shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust);

37

(2) except as otherwise expressly provided herein, to reimburse the Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustee in accordance with any provision of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its agents and counsel), except any such expense, disbursement or advance as may be attributable to its negligence or bad faith; and

(3) to indemnify the Trustee for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense incurred without negligence or bad faith on its part, arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of the trust or trusts hereunder, including the costs and expenses of defending itself against any claim or liability in connection with the exercise or performance of any of its powers or duties hereunder.

SECTION 608. Conflicting Interests.

If the Trustee has or shall acquire a conflicting interest within the meaning of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee shall either eliminate such interest or resign, to the extent and in the manner provided by, and subject to the provisions of, the Trust Indenture Act and this Indenture. To the extent permitted by such Act, the Trustee shall not be deemed to have a conflicting interest by virtue of being a trustee under this Indenture with respect to Securities of more than one series.

SECTION 609. Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility.

There shall at all times be one (and only one) Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of each series, which may be Trustee hereunder for Securities of one or more other series. Each Trustee shall be a Person that is eligible pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act to act as such, and has a combined capital and surplus of at least \$50,000,000. If any such Person publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of its supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section and to the extent permitted by the Trust Indenture Act, the combined capital and surplus of such Person shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, it shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect hereinafter specified in this Article.

SECTION 610. Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor.

No resignation or removal of the Trustee and no appointment of a successor Trustee pursuant to this Article shall become effective until the acceptance of appointment by the successor Trustee in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 611.

The Trustee may resign at any time with respect to the Securities of one or more series by giving written notice thereof to the Company. If the instrument of acceptance by a successor

Trustee required by Section 611 shall not have been delivered to the Trustee within 30 days after the giving of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series.

The Trustee may be removed at any time with respect to the Securities of any series by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series, delivered to the Trustee and to the Company.

If at any time:

(1) the Trustee shall fail to comply with Section 608 after written request therefor by the Company or by any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months, or

(2) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible under Section 609 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any such Holder, or

(3) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation,

then, in any such case, (A) the Company by a Board Resolution may remove the Trustee with respect to all Securities, or (B) subject to Section 514, any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee with respect to all Securities and the appointment of a successor Trustee or Trustees.

If the Trustee shall resign, be removed or become incapable of acting, or if a vacancy shall occur in the office of Trustee for any cause, with respect to the Securities of one or more series, the Company, by a Board Resolution, shall promptly appoint a successor Trustee or Trustees with respect to the Securities of that or those series (it being understood that any such successor Trustee may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more or all of such series and that at any time there shall be only one Trustee with respect to the Securities of any particular series) and shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 611. If, within one year after such resignation, removal or incapability, or the occurrence of such vacancy, a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall be appointed by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series delivered to the Company and the retiring Trustee, the successor Trustee so appointed shall, forthwith upon its acceptance of such appointment in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 611, become the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series and to that extent supersede the successor Trustee appointed by the Company. If no successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall have been so appointed by the Company or the Holders and accepted appointment in the manner required by Section 611, any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series.

The Company shall give notice of each resignation and each removal of the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series and each appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series to all Holders of Securities of such series in the manner provided in Section 106. Each notice shall include the name of the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series and the address of its Corporate Trust Office.

SECTION 611. Acceptance of Appointment by Successor.

In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to all Securities, every such successor Trustee so appointed shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the retiring Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective and such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee; but, on the request of the Company or the successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall, upon payment of its charges, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor Trustee all the rights, powers and trusts of the retiring Trustee and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder.

In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the retiring Trustee and each successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto wherein each successor Trustee shall accept such appointment and which (1) shall contain such provisions as shall be necessary or desirable to transfer and confirm to, and to vest in, each successor Trustee all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates, (2) if the retiring Trustee is not retiring with respect to all Securities, shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series as to which the retiring Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the retiring Trustee, and (3) shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust and that each such Trustee shall be trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee; and upon the execution and delivery of such supplemental indenture the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective to the extent provided therein and each such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates; but, on request of the Company or any successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates.

40

Upon request of any such successor Trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor Trustee all such rights, powers and trusts referred to in the first or second preceding paragraph, as the case may be.

No successor Trustee shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor Trustee shall be qualified and eligible under this Article.

SECTION 612. Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business.

Any Person into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any Person resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any Person succeeding to all or substantially all the corporate trust business of the Trustee, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, provided such Person shall be otherwise qualified and eligible under this Article, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto. As soon as practicable, the successor Trustee shall mail a notice of its succession to the Company and the Holders of the Securities then Outstanding. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated, but not delivered, by the Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities.

SECTION 613. Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company.

If and when the Trustee shall be or become a creditor of the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities, the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act regarding the collection of claims against the Company or any such other obligor.

SECTION 614. Appointment of Authenticating Agent.

The Trustee may appoint an Authenticating Agent or Agents with respect to one or more series of Securities which shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series issued upon original issue and upon exchange, registration of transfer, conversion or partial redemption thereof or pursuant to Section 306, and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. Wherever reference is made in this Indenture to the authentication and delivery of Securities by the Trustee or the Trustee's certificate of authentication, such reference shall be deemed to include authentication and delivery on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent and a certificate of authentication executed on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent. Each Authenticating Agent shall be acceptable to the Company and shall at all times be a Person organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America, any State thereof or the District of Columbia, authorized under such laws to act as Authenticating Agent, having a combined capital and surplus of not less than \$50,000,000 and subject to supervision or examination by Federal or State authority. If such Authenticating Agent publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of said supervising or examining authority, then for the

41

purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such Authenticating Agent shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time an Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, such Authenticating Agent shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in this Section.

Any Person into which an Authenticating Agent may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any Person resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which such Authenticating Agent shall be a party, or any Person succeeding to the corporate agency or corporate trust business of an Authenticating Agent, shall continue to be an Authenticating Agent, provided such Person shall be otherwise eligible under this Section, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of the Trustee or the Authenticating Agent.

An Authenticating Agent may resign at any time by giving written notice thereof to the Trustee and to the Company. The Trustee may at any time terminate the agency of an Authenticating Agent by giving written notice thereof to such Authenticating Agent and to the Company. Upon receiving such a

notice of resignation or upon such a termination, or in case at any time such Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustee may appoint a successor Authenticating Agent which shall be acceptable to the Company and shall give notice of such appointment in the manner provided in Section 106 to all Holders of Securities of the series with respect to which such Authenticating Agent will serve. Any successor Authenticating Agent upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder, with like effect as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent. No successor Authenticating Agent shall be appointed unless eligible under the provisions of this Section.

The Trustee agrees to pay to each Authenticating Agent from time to time reasonable compensation for its services under this Section, and the Trustee shall be entitled to be reimbursed for such payments, subject to the provisions of Section 607.

If an appointment with respect to one or more series is made pursuant to this Section, the Securities of such series may have endorsed thereon, in addition to the Trustee's certificate of authentication, an alternative certificate of authentication in the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

_____,
As Trustee

By _____,
As Authenticating Agent

By _____,
Authorized Officer

42

ARTICLE SEVEN
HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY

SECTION 701. Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders.

The Company will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee with respect to the Securities of each series:

(1) not more than 10 days after each record date with respect to the payment of interest, if any, a list, in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities of such series as of such record date, and

(2) at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing, within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished; excluding from any such list names and addresses received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar.

SECTION 702. Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders.

The Trustee shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, the names and addresses of Holders contained in the most recent list furnished to the Trustee as provided in Section 701 and the names and addresses of Holders received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar. The Trustee may destroy any list furnished to it as provided in Section 701 upon receipt of a new list so furnished.

The rights of Holders to communicate with other Holders with respect to their rights under this Indenture or under the Securities, and the corresponding rights and privileges of the Trustee, shall be as provided by the Trust Indenture Act.

Every Holder of Securities, by receiving and holding the same, agrees with the Company and the Trustee that neither the Company nor the Trustee nor any agent of any of them shall be held accountable by reason of any disclosure of information as to names and addresses of Holders made pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act.

SECTION 703. Reports by Trustee.

The Trustee shall transmit to Holders such reports concerning the Trustee and its actions under this Indenture as may be required pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act at the times and in the manner provided pursuant thereto.

A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to Holders, be filed by the Trustee with each stock exchange upon which any Securities are listed, with the Commission and with the Company. The Company will notify the Trustee when any Securities are listed on any stock exchange.

43

SECTION 704. Reports by Company.

The Company shall file with the Trustee and the Commission, and transmit to Holders, such information, documents and other reports, and such summaries thereof, as may be required pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act at the times and in the manner provided pursuant to such Act; provided that any such information, documents or reports required to be filed with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act shall be filed with the Trustee within 15 days after the same is so required to be filed with the Commission.

ARTICLE EIGHT
CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE, TRANSFER OR LEASE

SECTION 801. Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms.

The Company shall not, in a single transaction or a series of related transactions, consolidate with or merge into any other Person or permit any other Person to consolidate with or merge into the Company or, directly or indirectly, transfer, convey, sell, lease or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of its assets, unless:

(1) in a transaction in which the Company does not survive or in which the Company transfers, conveys, sells, leases or otherwise disposes of all or substantially all of its assets, the successor entity (for purposes of this Article Eight, a "Successor Company") shall be a corporation, partnership, trust or other entity organized and validly existing under the laws of the United States of America, any State thereof or the District of Columbia, and shall expressly assume, by an indenture supplemental hereto, executed and delivered to the Trustee, in form satisfactory to the Trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of and any premium and interest on all the Securities and the performance or observance of every covenant of this Indenture on the part of the Company to be performed or observed;

(2) immediately before and after giving pro forma effect to such transaction and treating any indebtedness which becomes an obligation of the Company or any Subsidiary as a result of such transaction as having been incurred by the Company or such Subsidiary at the time of such transaction, no Event of Default, and no event which, after notice or lapse of time or both, would become an Event of Default, shall have happened and be continuing;

(3) if, as a result of any such consolidation or merger or such transfer, conveyance, sale, lease or other disposition, properties or assets of the Company would become subject to a mortgage, pledge, lien, security interest or other encumbrance which would not be permitted by this Indenture, the Company or the Successor Company, as the case may be, shall take such steps as shall be necessary effectively to secure the Securities equally and ratably with (or prior to) all indebtedness secured thereby;

(4) any other conditions provided pursuant to Section 301 with respect to the Securities of a series are satisfied; and

44

(5) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that such consolidation, merger, transfer, conveyance, sale, lease or other disposition and, if a supplemental indenture is required in connection with such transaction, such supplemental indenture comply with this Article and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

SECTION 802. [Intentionally Omitted]

SECTION 803. Successor Substituted.

Upon any consolidation of the Company with, or merger of the Company into, any other Person or any transfer, conveyance, sale, lease or other disposition of all or substantially all of the assets of the Company in accordance with Section 801, the Successor Company shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Company under this Indenture with the same effect as if such successor Person had been named as the Company herein, and thereafter, except in the case of a lease, the predecessor Person shall be relieved of all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities.

ARTICLE NINE
SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES

SECTION 901. Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders.

Without the consent of any Holders, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee, at any time and from time to time, may enter into one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in form satisfactory to the Trustee, for any of the following purposes:

(1) to evidence the succession of another Person to the Company and the assumption by any such successor of the covenants of the Company herein and in the Securities; or

(2) to add to the covenants of the Company for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such covenants are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such covenants are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series) or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company; or

(3) to add any additional Events of Default for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such additional Events of Default are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such additional Events of Default are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series); or

(4) to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture to such extent as shall be necessary to permit or facilitate the issuance of Securities in bearer form, registrable or not registrable as to principal, and with or without interest coupons, or to permit or facilitate the issuance of Securities in uncertificated form; or

45

(5) to add to, change or eliminate any of the provisions of this Indenture in respect of one or more series of Securities, provided that any such addition, change or elimination (A) shall neither (i) apply to any Security of any series created prior to the execution of such supplemental indenture and entitled to the benefit of such provision nor (ii) modify the rights of the Holder of any such Security with respect to such provision or (B) shall become effective only when there is no such Security Outstanding; or

(6) to secure the Securities; or

(7) to establish the form or terms of Securities of any series as permitted by Sections 201 and 301; or

(8) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, pursuant to the requirements of Section 611; or

(9) to cure any ambiguity, to correct or supplement any provision herein which may be defective or inconsistent with any other provision herein; or

(10) to make any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Indenture, provided that such action pursuant to this clause (10) shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of Securities of any series in any material respect.

SECTION 902. Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Holders.

With the consent of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of each series affected by such supplemental indenture, by Act of said Holders delivered to the Company and the Trustee, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee may enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series under this Indenture; provided, however, that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby:

(1) change the Stated Maturity of the principal of, or any installment of principal of or interest on, any Security, or reduce the principal amount thereof or the rate of interest thereon or any premium payable upon the redemption thereof, or reduce the amount of the principal of an Original Issue Discount Security or any other Security which would be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 502, or change any Place of Payment where, or the coin or currency in which, any Security or any premium or interest thereon is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of (a) any such payment on or after the Stated Maturity thereof (or, in the case of redemption, on or after the Redemption Date or in the case of an offer to purchase Securities which has been made pursuant to a covenant contained in this Indenture, on or after the applicable purchase date) or (b) any conversion right with respect to any Security, or modify the provisions of this Indenture with respect to the conversion of the Securities, in a manner adverse to the Holders; or

46

(2) reduce the percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, the consent of whose Holders is required for any such supplemental indenture, or the consent of whose Holders is required for any waiver (of compliance with certain provisions of this Indenture or certain defaults hereunder and their consequences) provided for in this Indenture; or

(3) modify any of the provisions of this Section, Section 513 or Section 1009, except to increase any such percentage or to provide that certain other provisions of this Indenture cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby; provided, however, that this clause shall not be deemed to require the consent of any Holder with respect to changes in the references to “the Trustee” and concomitant changes in this Section and Section 1009, or the deletion of this proviso, in accordance with the requirements of Sections 611 and 901(8); or

(4) following the making of an offer to purchase Securities from any Holder which has been made pursuant to a covenant contained in this Indenture, modify the provisions of this Indenture with respect to such offer to purchase in a manner adverse to such Holder.

A supplemental indenture which changes or eliminates any covenant or other provision of this Indenture which has expressly been included solely for the benefit of one or more particular series of Securities, or which modifies the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series with respect to such covenant or other provision, shall be deemed not to affect the rights under this Indenture of the Holders of Securities of any other series.

It shall not be necessary for any Act of Holders under this Section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such Act shall approve the substance thereof.

SECTION 903. Execution of Supplemental Indentures.

In executing, or accepting the additional trusts created by, any supplemental indenture permitted by this Article or the modifications thereby of the trusts created by this Indenture, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 601) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating that the execution of such supplemental indenture is authorized or permitted by this Indenture. The Trustee may, but shall not be obligated to, enter into any such supplemental indenture which affects the Trustee’s own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

SECTION 904. Effect of Supplemental Indentures.

Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture under this Article, this Indenture shall be modified in accordance therewith, and such supplemental indenture shall form a part of this Indenture for all purposes; and every Holder of Securities theretofore or thereafter authenticated and delivered hereunder shall be bound thereby.

47

SECTION 905. Conformity With Trust Indenture Act.

Every supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article shall conform to the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act.

SECTION 906. Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures.

Securities of any series authenticated and delivered after the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to this Article may, and shall if required by the Trustee, bear a notation in form approved by the Trustee as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities of any series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Trustee and the Company, to any such supplemental indenture may be prepared and executed by the Company, and such new Securities may be authenticated and delivered by the Trustee in exchange for Outstanding Securities of such series.

ARTICLE TEN COVENANTS

SECTION 1001. Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest.

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of each series of Securities that it will duly and punctually pay the principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities of that series in accordance with the terms of the Securities and this Indenture. Principal, premium, if any, and interest shall be considered paid on the date due if the Paying Agent, if other than the Company or a Subsidiary thereof, holds as of 11:00 A.M., New York City time, on the due date money deposited by the Company in immediately available funds and designated for and sufficient to pay all principal, premium, if any, and interest then due.

SECTION 1002. Maintenance of Office or Agency.

The Company will maintain in each Place of Payment for any series of Securities an office or agency where Securities of that series may be presented or surrendered for payment or, if applicable, for conversion, where Securities of that series may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange and where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of that series and this Indenture may be served. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the location, and any change in the location, of such office or agency. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required office or agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee as its agent to receive all such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.

The Company may also from time to time designate one or more other offices or agencies where the Securities of one or more series may be presented or surrendered for any or all such purposes and may from time to time rescind such designations; provided, however, that no such designation or rescission shall in any manner relieve the Company of its obligation to maintain an office or agency in each Place of Payment for Securities of any series for such purposes. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of any such designation or rescission and of any change in the location of any such other office or agency.

48

SECTION 1003. Money for Securities Payments to be Held in Trust.

If the Company shall at any time act as its own Paying Agent with respect to any series of Securities, it will, on or before each due date of the principal of or any premium or interest on any of the Securities of that series, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum sufficient to pay the principal and any premium and interest so becoming due until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided and will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

Whenever the Company shall have one or more Paying Agents for any series of Securities, it will, prior to 11:00 A.M., New York City time, on each due date of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of that series, deposit with a Paying Agent a sum sufficient to pay such amount, such sum to be held as provided by the Trust Indenture Act, and (unless such Paying Agent is the Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

The Company will cause each Paying Agent for any series of Securities other than the Trustee to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such Paying Agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section, that such Paying Agent will (1) comply with the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act applicable to it as a Paying Agent and (2) during the continuance of any default by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities of that series in the making of any payment in respect of the Securities of that series, upon the written request of the Trustee, forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums held in trust by such Paying Agent for payment in respect of the Securities of that series.

The Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, pay, or by Company Order direct any Paying Agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums held in trust by the Company or such Paying Agent, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same trusts as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such Paying Agent; and, upon such payment by any Paying Agent to the Trustee, such Paying Agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such money.

Any money deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent, or then held by the Company, in trust for the payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Security of any series and remaining unclaimed for two years after such principal, premium or interest has become due and payable shall be paid to the Company on Company Request, or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and the Holder of such Security shall thereafter, as an unsecured general creditor, look only to the Company for payment thereof, and all liability of the Trustee or such Paying Agent with respect to such trust money, and all liability of the Company as trustee thereof, shall thereupon cease; provided, however, that the Trustee or such Paying Agent, before being required to make any such repayment, may at the expense of the Company cause to be published once, in a newspaper published in the English language, customarily published on each Business Day and of general circulation in The City of New York,

49

New York, notice that such money remains unclaimed and that, after a date specified therein, which shall not be less than 30 days from the date of such publication, any unclaimed balance of such money then remaining will be repaid to the Company.

SECTION 1004. Statement by Officers as to Default.

(a) The Company will deliver to the Trustee, within 90 days after the end of each fiscal year of the Company ending after the date hereof, an Officers' Certificate, stating whether or not to the best knowledge of the signers thereof the Company is in default in the performance and observance of any of the terms, provisions and conditions of this Indenture (without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice provided hereunder) and, if the Company shall be in default, specifying all such defaults and the nature and status thereof of which they may have knowledge.

(b) The Company shall deliver to the Trustee, as soon as possible and in any event within five days after the Company becomes aware or should reasonably become aware of the occurrence of an Event of Default or an event which, with notice or the lapse of time or both, would constitute an Event of Default, an Officers' Certificate setting forth the details of such Event of Default or default, and the action which the Company proposes to take with respect thereto.

SECTION 1005. Existence.

Subject to Article Eight, the Company will do or cause to be done all things necessary to preserve and keep in full force and effect the existence, rights (charter and statutory) and franchises of the Company; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to preserve any such right or franchise if it shall determine that the preservation thereof is no longer desirable in the conduct of the business of the Company and that the loss thereof is not disadvantageous in any material respect to the Holders.

SECTION 1006. Maintenance of Properties.

The Company will cause all properties used or useful in the conduct of its business or the business of any Subsidiary to be maintained and kept in good condition, repair and working order (reasonable wear and tear excepted) and supplied with all necessary equipment and will cause to be made all necessary repairs, renewals, replacements, betterments and improvements thereof, all as in the judgment of the Company may be necessary so that the business carried on in connection therewith may be properly and advantageously conducted at all times; provided, however, that nothing in this Section shall prevent the Company from discontinuing the operation or maintenance of any of such properties if such discontinuance is, in the judgment of the Company, desirable in the conduct of its business or the business of any Subsidiary and not disadvantageous in any material respect to the Holders.

SECTION 1007. Payment of Taxes and Other Claims.

The Company will pay or discharge or cause to be paid or discharged, before the same shall become delinquent, (1) all taxes, assessments and governmental charges levied or imposed upon the Company or any Subsidiary or upon the income, profits or property of the Company or

50

any Subsidiary, and (2) all lawful claims for labor, materials and supplies which, if unpaid, might by law become a lien upon the property of the Company or any Subsidiary; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to pay or discharge or cause to be paid or discharged any such tax, assessment, charge or claim whose amount, applicability or validity is being contested in good faith by appropriate proceedings.

SECTION 1008. Maintenance of Insurance.

The Company shall, and shall cause its Subsidiaries to, keep at all times all of their properties which are of an insurable nature insured against loss or damage with insurers believed by the Company to be responsible to the extent that property of similar character is usually so insured by corporations similarly situated and owning like properties in accordance with good business practice.

SECTION 1009. Waiver of Certain Covenants.

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301 for Securities of such series, the Company may, with respect to the Securities of any series, omit in any particular instance to comply with any term, provision or condition set forth in any of Sections 1005 through 1008 or in any covenant provided pursuant to Section 301(21), 901(2) or 901(7) for the benefit of the Holders of such series if before the time for such compliance the Holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series shall, by Act of such Holders, either waive such compliance in such instance or generally waive compliance with such term, provision or condition, but no such waiver shall extend to or affect such term, provision or condition except to the extent so expressly waived, and, until such waiver shall become effective, the obligations of the Company and the duties of the Trustee in respect of any such term, provision or condition shall remain in full force and effect.

ARTICLE ELEVEN
REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES

SECTION 1101. Applicability of Article.

Securities of any series which are redeemable before their Stated Maturity shall be redeemable in accordance with their terms and (except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301 for such Securities) in accordance with this Article.

SECTION 1102. Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee.

The election of the Company to redeem any Securities shall be evidenced by a Board Resolution or in another manner specified as contemplated by Section 301 for such Securities.

In case of any redemption at the election of the Company of less than all the Securities of any series (including any such redemption affecting only a single Security), the Company shall, at least five Business Days prior to giving notice of such redemption (unless a shorter notice shall be satisfactory to the Trustee), notify the Trustee of such Redemption Date, of the principal amount of Securities of such series to be redeemed and, if applicable, of the tenor of the Securities to be redeemed. In the case of any redemption of Securities prior to the expiration of

51

any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, the Company shall furnish the Trustee with an Officers' Certificate evidencing compliance with such restriction.

SECTION 1103. Selection by Trustee of Securities to be Redeemed.

If less than all the Securities of any series are to be redeemed (unless all the Securities of such series and of a specified tenor are to be redeemed or unless such redemption affects only a single Security), the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected by the Trustee, from the Outstanding Securities of such series not previously called for redemption, (i) in compliance with the requirements of the principal national securities exchange on which such Securities are listed, if such Securities are listed on any national securities exchange, and (ii) if such Securities are not so listed, on a pro rata basis, by lot or by such other method as the Trustee shall deem fair and appropriate and which may provide for the selection for redemption of a portion of the principal amount of any Security of such series, provided that the unredeemed portion of the principal amount of any Security shall be in an authorized denomination (which shall not be less than the minimum authorized denomination) for such Security. If less than all the Securities of such series and of a specified tenor are to be redeemed (unless such redemption affects only a single Security), the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected by the Trustee, from the Outstanding Securities of such series and specified tenor not previously called for redemption in accordance with the preceding sentence.

The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company in writing of the Securities selected for redemption as aforesaid and, in case of any Securities selected for partial redemption as aforesaid, the principal amount thereof to be redeemed.

The provisions of the two preceding paragraphs shall not apply with respect to any redemption affecting only a single Security, whether such Security is to be redeemed in whole or in part. In the case of any such redemption in part, the unredeemed portion of the principal amount of the Security shall be in an authorized denomination (which shall not be less than the minimum authorized denomination) for such Security.

For all purposes of this Indenture, unless the context otherwise requires, all provisions relating to the redemption of Securities shall relate, in the case of any Securities redeemed or to be redeemed only in part, to the portion of the principal amount of such Securities which has been or is to be redeemed. If any Security selected for partial redemption is surrendered for conversion after such selection, the converted portion of such Security shall be deemed (so far as may be) to be the portion selected for redemption. Upon any redemption of less than all the Securities of a series, for purposes of selection for redemption the Company and the Trustee may treat as Outstanding Securities surrendered for conversion during the period of 15 days next preceding the mailing of a notice of redemption, and need not treat as Outstanding any Security authenticated and delivered during such period in exchange for the unconverted portion of any Security converted in part during such period.

52

SECTION 1104. Notice of Redemption.

Notice of redemption shall be given by first-class mail, postage prepaid, mailed not less than 30 nor more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date, to each Holder of Securities to be redeemed, at his address appearing in the Security Register; provided, however, notice of redemption may be given more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date if the notice is issued in connection with a satisfaction and discharge pursuant to Article Four.

All notices of redemption shall state:

- (1) the Redemption Date,
- (2) the Redemption Price, if then determinable and otherwise the method of its determination,
- (3) if less than all the Outstanding Securities of any series consisting of more than a single Security are to be redeemed, the identification (and, in the case of partial redemption of any such Securities, the principal amounts) of the particular Securities to be redeemed and, if less than all the Outstanding Securities of any series consisting of a single Security are to be redeemed, the principal amount of the particular Security to be redeemed,
- (4) that on the Redemption Date the Redemption Price will become due and payable upon each such Security to be redeemed and, if applicable, that interest thereon will cease to accrue on and after said date,
- (5) the place or places where each such Security is to be surrendered for payment of the Redemption Price,
- (6) that the redemption is for a sinking fund, if such is the case; and
- (7) if applicable, the conversion price then in effect and the date on which the right to convert such Securities will expire.

Notice of redemption of Securities to be redeemed at the election of the Company shall be given by the Company or, at the Company's request, by the Trustee in the name and at the expense of the Company and shall be irrevocable. If any Security called for redemption is converted pursuant hereto, any money deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent or so segregated and held in trust for the redemption of such Security shall be paid to the Company upon delivery of a Company Request to the Trustee or such Paying Agent, or, if then held by the Company, shall be discharged from such trust.

SECTION 1105. Deposit of Redemption Price.

Prior to 11:00 A.M., New York City time, on any Redemption Date, the Company shall deposit with the Trustee or with a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 1003) an amount of money sufficient to pay the Redemption Price of, and (except if the Redemption Date shall be an Interest Payment Date) accrued interest on, all the Securities which are to be redeemed on that date.

53

SECTION 1106. Securities Payable on Redemption Date.

Notice of redemption having been given as aforesaid, the Securities so to be redeemed shall, on the Redemption Date, become due and payable at the Redemption Price therein specified, and from and after such date (unless the Company shall default in the payment of the Redemption Price and accrued interest) such Securities shall cease to bear interest. Upon surrender of any such Security for redemption in accordance with said notice, such Security shall be paid by the Company at the Redemption Price, together with accrued interest to the Redemption Date; provided, however, that, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301, installments of interest whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to the Redemption Date will be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, registered as such at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates according to their terms and the provisions of Section 307.

If any Security called for redemption shall not be so paid upon surrender thereof for redemption, the principal and any premium shall, until paid, bear interest from the Redemption Date at the rate prescribed therefor in the Security.

SECTION 1107. Securities Redeemed in Part.

Any Security which is to be redeemed only in part shall be surrendered at a Place of Payment therefor (with, if the Company or the Trustee so requires, due endorsement by, or a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Trustee duly executed by, the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing), and the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder of such Security without service charge, a new Security or Securities of the same series and of like tenor, of any authorized denomination as requested by such Holder, in aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the unredeemed portion of the principal of the Security so surrendered.

ARTICLE TWELVE
[INTENTIONALLY OMITTED]

ARTICLE THIRTEEN
[INTENTIONALLY OMITTED]

ARTICLE FOURTEEN
[INTENTIONALLY OMITTED]

ARTICLE FIFTEEN
DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE

SECTION 1501. Company's Option to Effect Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.

The Company may elect, at its option at any time, to have Section 1502 or Section 1503 applied to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, designated pursuant to

Section 301 as being defeasible pursuant to such Section 1502 or 1503, in accordance with any applicable requirements provided pursuant to Section 301 and upon compliance with the conditions set forth below in this Article. Any such election shall be evidenced in or pursuant to a Board Resolution or in another manner specified as contemplated by Section 301 for such Securities.

SECTION 1502. Defeasance and Discharge.

Upon the Company's exercise of its option (if any) to have this Section applied to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, the Company shall be deemed to have been discharged from its obligations, as provided in this Section on and after the date the conditions set forth in Section 1504 are satisfied (herein called "Defeasance"). For this purpose, such Defeasance means that the Company shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by such Securities and to have satisfied all its other obligations under such Securities and this Indenture insofar as such Securities are concerned (and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging the same), subject to the following which shall survive until otherwise terminated or discharged hereunder: (1) the rights of Holders of such Securities to receive, solely from the trust fund described in Section 1504 and as more fully set forth in such Section, payments in respect of the principal of and any premium and interest on such Securities when payments are due, or, if applicable, to convert such Securities in accordance with their terms, (2) the Company's obligations with respect to such Securities under Sections 304, 305, 306, 1002 and 1003, and, if applicable, its obligations with respect to the conversion of such Securities, (3) the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the Trustee hereunder and (4) this Article. Subject to compliance with this Article, the Company may exercise its option (if any) to have this Section applied to any Securities notwithstanding the prior exercise of its option (if any) to have Section 1503 applied to such Securities.

SECTION 1503. Covenant Defeasance.

Upon the Company's exercise of its option (if any) to have this Section applied to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, (1) the Company shall be released from its obligations under Section 801(3), Sections 1005 through 1008, inclusive, and any covenants provided pursuant to Section 301(21), 901(2) or 901(7) for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities, and (2) the occurrence of any event specified in Sections 501(5) (with respect to any of Section 801(3), Sections 1006 through 1008, inclusive, and any such covenants provided pursuant to Section 301(21), 901(2) or 901(7)), 501(8) and 501(9) shall be deemed not to be or result in an Event of Default, in each case with respect to such Securities as provided in this Section on and after the date the conditions set forth in Section 1504 are satisfied (herein called "Covenant Defeasance"). For this purpose, such Covenant Defeasance means that, with respect to such Securities, the Company may omit to comply with and shall have no liability in respect of any term, condition or limitation set forth in any such specified Section (to the extent so specified in the case of Section 501(5)), whether directly or indirectly by reason of any reference elsewhere herein to any such Section or Article or by reason of any reference in any such Section or Article to any other provision herein or in any other document, but the remainder of this Indenture and such Securities shall be unaffected thereby.

SECTION 1504. Conditions to Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.

The following shall be the conditions to the application of Section 1502 or Section 1503 to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be:

(1) The Company shall irrevocably have deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee (or another trustee which satisfies the requirements contemplated by Section 609 and agrees to comply with the provisions of this Article applicable to it) as trust funds in trust for the purpose of making the following payments, specifically pledged as security for, and dedicated solely to, the benefits of the Holders of such Securities, (A) money in an amount, or (B) U.S. Government Obligations which through the scheduled payment of principal and interest in respect thereof in accordance with their terms will provide, not later than one day before the due date of any payment, money in an amount, or (C) a combination thereof, in each case sufficient, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay and discharge, and which shall be applied by the Trustee (or any such other qualifying trustee) to pay and discharge, the principal of and any premium and interest on such Securities on the respective Stated Maturities, in accordance with the terms of this Indenture and such Securities. As used herein, "U.S. Government Obligation" means (x) any security which is (i) a direct obligation of the United States of America for the payment of which the full faith and credit of the United States of America is pledged or (ii) an obligation of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by the United States of America, which, in either case (i) or (ii), is not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof, and (y) any depositary receipt issued by a bank (as defined in Section 3(a)(2) of the Securities Act) as custodian with respect to any U.S. Government Obligation which is specified in clause (x) above and held by such bank for the account of the holder of such depositary receipt, or with respect to any specific payment of principal or interest on any U.S. Government Obligation which is so specified and held, provided that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depositary receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the U.S. Government Obligation or the specific payment of principal or interest evidenced by such depositary receipt.

(2) In the event of an election to have Section 1502 apply to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel stating that (A) the Company has received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling or (B) since the date of this instrument, there has been a change in the applicable Federal income tax law, in either case (A) or (B) to the effect that, and based thereon such opinion shall confirm that, the Holders of such Securities will not recognize gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of the deposit, Defeasance and discharge to be effected with respect to such Securities and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amount, in the same manner and at the same times as would be the case if such deposit, Defeasance and discharge were not to occur.

56

(3) In the event of an election to have Section 1503 apply to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that the Holders of such Securities will not recognize gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of the deposit and Covenant Defeasance to be effected with respect to such Securities and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amount, in the same manner and at the same times as would be the case if such deposit and Covenant Defeasance were not to occur.

(4) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate to the effect that neither such Securities nor any other Securities of the same series, if then listed on any securities exchange, will be delisted as a result of such deposit.

(5) No event which is, or after notice or lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default with respect to such Securities or any other Securities shall have occurred and be continuing at the time of such deposit or, with regard to any such event specified in Section 501(6), at any time on or prior to the 121st day after the date of such deposit (it being understood that this condition shall not be deemed satisfied until after such 121st day).

(6) Such Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance shall not cause the Trustee to have a conflicting interest within the meaning of the Trust Indenture Act (assuming all Securities are in default within the meaning of such Act).

(7) Such Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance shall not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, any other agreement or instrument to which the Company or any Subsidiary is a party or by which it is bound.

(8) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that such deposit shall not cause either the Trustee or the trust so created to be subject to the Investment Company Act of 1940.

(9) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent with respect to such Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance have been complied with.

SECTION 1505. Deposited Money and U.S. Government Obligations to be Held in Trust; Miscellaneous Provisions.

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 1003, all money and U.S. Government Obligations (including the proceeds thereof) deposited with the Trustee or other qualifying trustee (solely for purposes of this Section and Section 1506, the Trustee and any such other trustee are referred to collectively as the "Trustee") pursuant to Section 1504 in respect of any Securities shall be held in trust and applied by the Trustee, in accordance with the provisions of such Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any such Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Holders of such Securities, of all sums due and to become due thereon in respect of principal and any premium and interest, but money so held in trust need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

57

The Company shall pay and indemnify the Trustee against any tax, fee or other charge imposed on or assessed against the U.S. Government Obligations deposited pursuant to Section 1504 or the principal and interest received in respect thereof other than any such tax, fee or other charge which by law is for the account of the Holders of Outstanding Securities.

Anything in this Article to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall deliver or pay to the Company from time to time upon Company Request any money or U.S. Government Obligations held by it as provided in Section 1504 with respect to any Securities which, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, are in excess of the amount thereof which would then be required to be deposited to effect the Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance, as the case may be, with respect to such Securities.

SECTION 1506. Reinstatement.

If the Trustee or the Paying Agent is unable to apply any money in accordance with this Article with respect to any Securities by reason of any order or judgment of any court or governmental authority enjoining, restraining or otherwise prohibiting such application, then the obligations under this Indenture and such Securities from which the Company has been discharged or released pursuant to Section 1502 or 1503 shall be revived and reinstated as though no deposit had occurred pursuant to this Article with respect to such Securities, until such time as the Trustee or Paying Agent is permitted to apply all money held in trust pursuant to Section 1505 with respect to such Securities in accordance with this Article; provided, however, that if the Company makes any payment of principal of or any premium or interest on any such Security following such reinstatement of its obligations, the Company shall be subrogated to the rights (if any) of the Holders of such Securities to receive such payment from the money so held in trust.

ARTICLE SIXTEEN
SINKING FUNDS

SECTION 1601. Applicability of Article.

The provisions of this Article shall be applicable to any sinking fund for the retirement of Securities of any series except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301 for such Securities.

The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of any Securities is herein referred to as a "mandatory sinking fund payment", and any payment in excess of such minimum amount provided for by the terms of such Securities is herein referred to as an "optional sinking fund payment." If provided for by the terms of any Securities, the cash amount of any sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in Section 1602. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities as provided for by the terms of such Securities.

58

SECTION 1602. Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities.

The Company (1) may deliver Outstanding Securities of a series (other than any previously called for redemption) and (2) may apply as a credit Securities of a series which have been (x) converted or (y) redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Securities or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments pursuant to the terms of such Securities, in each case in satisfaction of all or any part of any sinking fund payment with respect to any Securities of such series required to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities as and to the extent provided for by the terms of such Securities; provided, however, that the Securities to be so credited have not been previously so credited. The Securities to be so credited shall be received and credited for such purpose by the Trustee at the Redemption Price, as specified in the Securities so to be redeemed, for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly.

SECTION 1603. Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund.

Not less than 35 days prior to each sinking fund payment date for any Securities, the Company will deliver to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing sinking fund payment for such Securities pursuant to the terms of such Securities, the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by payment of cash and the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting Securities pursuant to Section 1602 and will also deliver to the Trustee any Securities to be so delivered. Not less than 32 days prior to each such sinking fund payment date, the Trustee shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in Section 1103 and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in Section 1104. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in Sections 1106 and 1107.

This instrument may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

59

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed, all as of the day and year first above written.

ISSUER:

Evolution Petroleum Corporation

By: _____
Name:
Title:

TRUSTEE:

_____,
as Trustee

By: _____

Name:

Title:

Evolution Petroleum Corporation,

as Issuer

and

,

as Trustee

SUBORDINATED INDENTURE

Dated as of , 20

TABLE OF CONTENTS

| | |
|---|----|
| ARTICLE ONE DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION | 1 |
| SECTION 101. Definitions. | 1 |
| SECTION 102. Compliance Certificates and Opinions. | 7 |
| SECTION 103. Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee. | 7 |
| SECTION 104. Acts of Holders; Record Dates. | 8 |
| SECTION 105. Notices, Etc., to Trustee and Company. | 10 |
| SECTION 106. Notice to Holders; Waiver. | 10 |
| SECTION 107. Conflict with Trust Indenture Act. | 11 |
| SECTION 108. Effect of Headings and Table of Contents. | 11 |
| SECTION 109. Successors and Assigns. | 11 |
| SECTION 110. Separability Clause. | 11 |
| SECTION 111. Benefits of Indenture. | 11 |
| SECTION 112. Governing Law. | 11 |
| SECTION 113. Legal Holidays. | 11 |
| ARTICLE TWO SECURITY FORMS | 12 |
| SECTION 201. Forms Generally. | 12 |
| SECTION 202. Form of face of Security. | 12 |
| SECTION 203. Form of Reverse of Security. | 14 |
| SECTION 204. [Intentionally Omitted] | 17 |
| SECTION 205. Form of Legend for Global Securities. | 17 |
| SECTION 206. Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication. | 18 |
| ARTICLE THREE THE SECURITIES | 18 |
| SECTION 301. Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series. | 18 |
| SECTION 302. Denominations. | 21 |
| SECTION 303. Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating. | 21 |
| SECTION 304. Temporary Securities. | 22 |
| SECTION 305. Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange. | 23 |
| SECTION 306. Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities. | 24 |
| SECTION 307. Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved. | 25 |
| SECTION 308. Persons Deemed Owners. | 26 |
| SECTION 309. Cancellation. | 26 |
| SECTION 310. Computation of Interest. | 27 |
| ARTICLE FOUR SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE | 27 |
| SECTION 401. Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture. | 27 |
| SECTION 402. Application of Trust Money. | 28 |
| ARTICLE FIVE REMEDIES | 28 |
| SECTION 501. Events of Default. | 28 |
| SECTION 502. Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment. | 30 |
| SECTION 503. Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee. | 31 |
| SECTION 504. Trustee May File Proofs of Claim. | 31 |
| SECTION 505. Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities. | 32 |
| SECTION 506. Application of Money Collected. | 32 |
| SECTION 507. Limitation on Suits. | 32 |
| SECTION 508. Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest. | 33 |
| SECTION 509. Restoration of Rights and Remedies. | 33 |
| SECTION 510. Rights and Remedies Cumulative. | 33 |

| | |
|---|----|
| SECTION 511. Delay or Omission Not Waiver. | 33 |
| SECTION 512. Control by Holders. | 34 |
| SECTION 513. Waiver of Past Defaults. | 34 |
| SECTION 514. Undertaking for Costs. | 34 |
| SECTION 515. Waiver of Usury, Stay or Extension Laws. | 34 |
| | |
| ARTICLE SIX THE TRUSTEE | 35 |
| SECTION 601. Certain Duties and Responsibilities. | 35 |
| SECTION 602. Notice of Defaults. | 35 |
| SECTION 603. Certain Rights of Trustee. | 35 |
| SECTION 604. Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities. | 36 |
| SECTION 605. May Hold Securities. | 36 |
| SECTION 606. Money Held in Trust. | 36 |
| SECTION 607. Compensation and Reimbursement. | 37 |
| SECTION 608. Conflicting Interests. | 37 |
| SECTION 609. Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility. | 37 |
| SECTION 610. Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor. | 38 |
| SECTION 611. Acceptance of Appointment by Successor. | 39 |
| SECTION 612. Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business. | 40 |
| SECTION 613. Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company. | 40 |
| SECTION 614. Appointment of Authenticating Agent. | 40 |
| | |
| ARTICLE SEVEN HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY | 42 |
| SECTION 701. Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders. | 42 |
| SECTION 702. Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders. | 42 |
| SECTION 703. Reports by Trustee. | 43 |
| SECTION 704. Reports by Company. | 43 |
| | |
| ARTICLE EIGHT CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE, TRANSFER OR LEASE | 43 |
| SECTION 801. Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms. | 43 |
| SECTION 802. [Intentionally Omitted] | 44 |
| SECTION 803. Successor Substituted. | 44 |
| | |
| ARTICLE NINE SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES | 44 |
| SECTION 901. Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders. | 44 |
| SECTION 902. Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Holders. | 45 |
| SECTION 903. Execution of Supplemental Indentures. | 46 |
| SECTION 904. Effect of Supplemental Indentures. | 47 |
| SECTION 905. Conformity with Trust Indenture Act. | 47 |
| SECTION 906. Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures. | 47 |
| | |
| ARTICLE TEN COVENANTS | 47 |
| SECTION 1001. Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest. | 47 |
| SECTION 1002. Maintenance of Office or Agency. | 47 |
| SECTION 1003. Money for Securities Payments to Be Held in Trust. | 48 |
| | |
| ii | |
| <hr/> | |
| | |
| SECTION 1004. Statement by Officers as to Default. | 49 |
| SECTION 1005. Existence. | 49 |
| SECTION 1006. Maintenance of Properties. | 49 |
| SECTION 1007. Payment of Taxes and Other Claims. | 50 |
| SECTION 1008. Maintenance of Insurance. | 50 |
| SECTION 1009. Waiver of Certain Covenants. | 50 |
| | |
| ARTICLE ELEVEN REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES | 50 |
| SECTION 1101. Applicability of Article. | 50 |
| SECTION 1102. Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee. | 51 |
| SECTION 1103. Selection by Trustee of Securities to Be Redeemed. | 51 |
| SECTION 1104. Notice of Redemption. | 52 |
| SECTION 1105. Deposit of Redemption Price. | 52 |
| SECTION 1106. Securities Payable on Redemption Date. | 52 |
| SECTION 1107. Securities Redeemed in Part. | 53 |
| | |
| ARTICLE TWELVE SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES | 53 |
| SECTION 1201. Applicability of Article. | 53 |
| SECTION 1202. Securities Subordinate to Senior Debt. | 53 |
| SECTION 1203. Payment Over of Proceeds Upon Dissolution, Etc. | 54 |
| SECTION 1204. No Payment When Senior Debt of the Company in Default. | 55 |
| SECTION 1205. Payment Permitted If No Default. | 56 |
| SECTION 1206. Subrogation to Rights of Holders of Senior Debt of the Company. | 56 |
| SECTION 1207. Provisions Solely to Define Relative Rights. | 56 |
| SECTION 1208. Trustee to Effectuate Subordination. | 57 |
| SECTION 1209. No Waiver of Subordination Provisions. | 57 |

| | |
|--|----|
| SECTION 1210. Notice to Trustee. | 57 |
| SECTION 1211. Reliance on Judicial Order or Certificate of Liquidating Agent. | 58 |
| SECTION 1212. Trustee Not Fiduciary for Holders of Senior Debt of the Company. | 58 |
| SECTION 1213. Rights of Trustee as Holder of Senior Debt of the Company; Preservation of Trustee's Rights. | 59 |
| SECTION 1214. Article Applicable to Paying Agents. | 59 |
| SECTION 1215. Defeasance of this Article Twelve. | 59 |
| | |
| ARTICLE THIRTEEN [INTENTIONALLY OMITTED] | 59 |
| | |
| ARTICLE FOURTEEN [INTENTIONALLY OMITTED] | 59 |
| | |
| ARTICLE FIFTEEN DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE | 59 |
| SECTION 1501. Company's Option to Effect Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance. | 59 |
| SECTION 1502. Defeasance and Discharge. | 60 |
| SECTION 1503. Covenant Defeasance. | 60 |
| SECTION 1504. Conditions to Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance. | 61 |
| SECTION 1505. Deposited Money and U.S. Government Obligations to Be Held in Trust; Miscellaneous Provisions. | 62 |
| SECTION 1506. Reinstatement. | 63 |
| | |
| ARTICLE SIXTEEN SINKING FUNDS | 63 |
| SECTION 1601. Applicability of Article. | 63 |
| SECTION 1602. Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities. | 64 |
| SECTION 1603. Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund. | 64 |

EVOLUTION PETROLEUM CORPORATION

CERTAIN SECTIONS OF THIS INDENTURE RELATING TO
SECTIONS 310 THROUGH 318,
INCLUSIVE, OF THE TRUST INDENTURE ACT OF 1939:

| <u>TRUST INDENTURE ACT</u> | <u>SECTION INDENTURE SECTION</u> |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Section 310(a)(1) | 609 |
| (a)(2) | 609 |
| (a)(3) | Not Applicable |
| (a)(4) | Not Applicable |
| (b) | 608 |
| | 610 |
| Section 311(a) | 613 |
| (b) | 613 |
| Section 312(a) | 701 |
| | 702 |
| (b) | 702 |
| (c) | 702 |
| Section 313(a) | 703 |
| (b) | 703 |
| (c) | 703 |
| (d) | 703 |
| Section 314(a) | 704 |
| (a)(4) | 101 |
| | 1004 |
| (b) | Not Applicable |
| (c)(1) | 102 |
| (c)(2) | 102 |
| (c)(3) | Not Applicable |
| (d) | Not Applicable |
| (e) | 102 |
| Section 315(a) | 601 |
| (b) | 602 |
| (c) | 601 |
| (d) | 601 |
| (e) | 514 |
| Section 316(a) | 101 |
| (a)(1)(A) | 502 |
| | 512 |
| (a)(1)(B) | 513 |
| (a)(2) | Not Applicable |
| (b) | 508 |
| (c) | 104 |
| Section 317(a)(1) | 503 |
| (a)(2) | 504 |
| (b) | 1003 |

NOTE: This reconciliation and tie shall not, for any purpose, be deemed to be a part of the Indenture.

i

INDENTURE, dated as of _____, 20____, among Evolution Petroleum Corporation, a corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of the State of Nevada (herein called the “Company”), having its principal office at 2500 CityWest Blvd., Suite 1300, Houston, Texas 77042 and _____, a banking corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of the State of New York, as Trustee (herein called the “Trustee”).

RECITALS OF THE COMPANY

The Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance from time to time of its unsecured debentures, notes or other evidences of indebtedness (herein called the “Securities”), to be issued in one or more series as in this Indenture provided.

All things necessary to make this Indenture a valid agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done.

NOW, THEREFORE, THIS INDENTURE WITNESSETH:

For and in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Securities by the Holders thereof, it is mutually agreed, for the equal and proportionate benefit of all Holders of the Securities or of series thereof, as follows:

ARTICLE ONE DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION

SECTION 101. Definitions.

For all purposes of this Indenture, except as otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires:

(1) the terms defined in this Article have the meanings assigned to them in this Article and include the plural as well as the singular;

(2) all other terms used herein which are defined in the Trust Indenture Act, either directly or by reference therein, have the meanings assigned to them therein;

(3) all accounting terms not otherwise defined herein have the meanings assigned to them in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and, except as otherwise herein expressly provided, the term “generally accepted accounting principles” with respect to any computation required or permitted hereunder shall mean such accounting principles as are generally accepted at the date of this instrument;

(4) unless the context otherwise requires, any reference to an “Article” or a “Section” refers to an Article or a Section, as the case may be, of this Indenture; and

1

(5) the words “herein”, “hereof”, “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

“Act” when used with respect to any Holder, has the meaning specified in Section 104.

“Affiliate” of any specified Person means any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified Person. For the purposes of this definition, “control” when used with respect to any specified Person means the power to direct the management and policies of such Person, directly or indirectly, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise; and the terms “controlling” and “controlled” have meanings correlative to the foregoing; provided that direct or indirect beneficial ownership of 10% or more of the Voting Stock of a Person shall be deemed to control.

“Authenticating Agent” means any Person authorized by the Trustee pursuant to Section 614 to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of one or more series.

“Board of Directors” means either the board of directors of the Company or any committee of that board duly authorized to act for it in respect hereof.

“Board Resolution” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company, to have been duly adopted by its Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Business Day” when used with respect to any Place of Payment, means each Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday which is not a day on which banking institutions in that Place of Payment are authorized or obligated by law or executive order to close.

“Capital Stock” of any Person means any and all shares, interests, participations or other equivalents (however designated) of corporate stock or other equity participations, including partnership interests, whether general or limited, of such Person.

“Commission” means the Securities and Exchange Commission, from time to time constituted, created under the Exchange Act, or, if at any time after the execution of this instrument such Commission is not existing and performing the duties now assigned to it under the Trust Indenture Act, then the body performing such duties at such time.

“Common Stock” means the common stock, no par value, of the Company as the same exists at the date of execution and delivery of this Indenture or other Capital Stock of the Company into which such common stock is converted, reclassified or changed from time to time.

“Company” means the Person named as the “Company” in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor Person shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Company” shall mean such successor Person.

“Company Request” or “Company Order” means a written request or order signed in the name of the Company by its Chairman of the Board of Directors, its Vice Chairman of the Board of Directors, its President or a Vice President, and by its Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, its Secretary or an Assistant Secretary, and delivered to the Trustee.

2

“Conversion Agent” means any Person authorized by the Company to convert any Securities on behalf of the Company.

“Corporate Trust Office” means the principal office of the Trustee at which at any particular time its corporate trust business shall be administered, such office being located on the date hereof at .

“Corporation” means a corporation, association, limited liability company, joint-stock company or business trust.

“Covenant Defeasance” has the meaning specified in Section 1503.

“Defaulted Interest” has the meaning specified in Section 307.

“Defeasance” has the meaning specified in Section 1502.

“Depository” means, with respect to Securities of any series issuable in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities, a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act that is designated to act as Depository for such Securities as contemplated by Section 301.

“Event of Default” has the meaning specified in Section 501.

“Exchange Act” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and any statute successor thereto, in each case as amended from time to time.

“Expiration Date” has the meaning specified in Section 104.

“Global Security” means a Security that evidences all or part of the Securities of any series and bears the legend set forth in Section 205 (or such legend as may be specified as contemplated by Section 301 for such Securities).

“Holder” means a Person in whose name a Security is registered in the Security Register.

“Indenture” means this instrument as originally executed and as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof, including, for all purposes of this instrument and any such supplemental indenture, the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act that are deemed to be a part of and govern this instrument and any such supplemental indenture, respectively. The term “Indenture” shall also include the terms of particular series of Securities established as contemplated by Section 301.

“interest”, when used with respect to an Original Issue Discount Security which by its terms bears interest only after Maturity, means interest payable after Maturity.

3

“Interest Payment Date”, when used with respect to any Security, means the Stated Maturity of an installment of interest on such Security.

“Investment Company Act” means the Investment Company Act of 1940 and any statute successor thereto, in each case as amended from time to time.

“Maturity”, when used with respect to any Security, means the date on which the principal of such Security or an installment of principal becomes due and payable as therein or herein provided, whether at the Stated Maturity or by declaration of acceleration, call for redemption or otherwise.

“Notice of Default” means a written notice of the kind specified in Section 501(4).

“Officers’ Certificate” means a certificate signed by the Chairman of the Board of Directors, a Vice Chairman of the Board of Directors, the President or a Vice President, and by the Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee. One of the officers signing an Officers’ Certificate given pursuant to Section 1004 shall be the principal executive, financial or accounting officer of the Company.

“Opinion of Counsel” means a written opinion of counsel, who shall be acceptable to the Trustee.

“Original Issue Discount Security” means any Security which provides for an amount less than the principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 502.

“Outstanding”, when used with respect to Securities, means, as of the date of determination, all Securities theretofore authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, except:

(1) Securities theretofore cancelled by the Trustee or delivered to the Trustee for cancellation;

(2) Securities for whose payment or redemption money in the necessary amount has been theretofore deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent (other than the Company) in trust or set aside and segregated in trust by the Company (if the Company shall act as its own Paying Agent) for the Holders of such Securities; provided that, if such Securities are to be redeemed, notice of such redemption has been duly given pursuant to this Indenture or provision therefor satisfactory to the Trustee has been made;

(3) Securities as to which Defeasance has been effected pursuant to Section 1502; and

(4) Securities which have been paid pursuant to Section 306 or in exchange for or in lieu of which other Securities have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to this Indenture, other than any such Securities in respect of which there shall have been presented to the Trustee proof satisfactory to it that such Securities are held by a bona fide purchaser in whose hands such Securities are valid obligations of the Company; provided, however, that in determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal

4

amount of the Outstanding Securities have given, made or taken any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action hereunder as of any date, (A) the principal amount of an Original Issue Discount Security which shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the amount of the principal thereof which would be due and payable as of such date upon acceleration of the Maturity thereof to such date pursuant to Section 502, (B) if, as of such date, the principal amount payable at the Stated Maturity of a Security is not determinable, the principal amount of such Security which shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the amount as specified or determined as contemplated by Section 301, (C) the principal amount of a Security denominated in one or more foreign currencies or currency units which shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the U.S. dollar equivalent, determined as of such date in the manner provided as contemplated by Section 301, of the principal amount of such Security (or, in the case of a Security described in clause (A) or (B) above, of the amount determined as provided in such clause), and (D) Securities owned by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding, except that, in determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying upon any such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, only Securities which the Trustee knows to be so owned shall be so disregarded. Securities so owned which have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding if the pledgee establishes to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor.

"Paying Agent" means any Person authorized by the Company to pay the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities on behalf of the Company.

"Person" means any individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof.

"Place of Payment," when used with respect to the Securities of any series, means the place or places where the principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities of that series are payable as specified as contemplated by Section 301.

"Predecessor Security" of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under Section 306 in exchange for or in lieu of a mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security.

"Redemption Date," when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the date fixed for such redemption by or pursuant to this Indenture.

"Redemption Price," when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the price at which it is to be redeemed pursuant to this Indenture.

5

"Regular Record Date" for the interest payable on any Interest Payment Date on the Securities of any series means the date specified for that purpose as contemplated by Section 301.

"Securities" has the meaning stated in the first recital of this Indenture and more particularly means any Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture.

"Securities Act" means the Securities Act of 1933 and any statute successor thereto, in each case as amended from time to time.

"Security Register" and "Security Registrar" have the respective meanings specified in Section 305.

"Senior Debt" with respect to any series of Securities shall have the meaning specified as contemplated by Section 301.

"Significant Subsidiary" means, at any date of determination, any Subsidiary that represents 10% or more of the Company's consolidated total assets at the end of the most recent fiscal quarter for which financial information is available or 10% or more of the Company's consolidated net revenues or consolidated operating income for the most recent four quarters for which financial information is available.

"Special Record Date" for the payment of any Defaulted Interest means a date fixed by the Trustee pursuant to Section 307.

"Stated Maturity," when used with respect to any Security or any installment of principal thereof or interest thereon, means the date specified in such Security as the fixed date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal or interest is due and payable.

"Subsidiary" of any Person means (1) a corporation more than 50% of the combined voting power of the outstanding Voting Stock of which is owned, directly or indirectly, by such Person or by one or more other Subsidiaries of such Person or by such Person and one or more Subsidiaries thereof or (2) any

other Person (other than a corporation) in which such Person, or one or more other Subsidiaries of such Person or such Person and one or more other Subsidiaries thereof, directly or indirectly, has at least a majority ownership and power to direct the policies, management and affairs thereof.

“Trust Indenture Act” means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as in force at the date as of which this instrument was executed; provided, however, that in the event the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 is amended after such date, “Trust Indenture Act” means, to the extent required by any such amendment, the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as so amended.

“Trustee” means the Person named as the “Trustee” in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor Trustee shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Trustee” shall mean or include each Person who is then a Trustee hereunder, and if at any time there is more than one such Person, “Trustee” as used with respect to the Securities of any series shall mean the Trustee with respect to Securities of that series.

6

“U.S. Government Obligation” has the meaning specified in Section 1504.

“Vice President,” when used with respect to the Company or the Trustee, means any vice president, whether or not designated by a number or a word or words added before or after the title “vice president”.

“Voting Stock” of any Person means Capital Stock of such Person which ordinarily has voting power for the election of directors (or persons performing similar functions) of such Person, whether at all times or only so long as no senior class of securities has such voting power by reason of any contingency.

SECTION 102. Compliance Certificates and Opinions.

Upon any application or request by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any provision of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee such certificates and opinions as may be required under the Trust Indenture Act. Each such certificate or opinion shall be given in the form of an Officers’ Certificate, if to be given by an officer of the Company, or an Opinion of Counsel, if to be given by counsel, and shall comply with the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act and any other requirements set forth in this Indenture.

Every certificate or opinion with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant provided for in this Indenture shall include,

(1) a statement that each individual signing such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition and the definitions herein relating thereto;

(2) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based;

(3) a statement that, in the opinion of each such individual, he has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and

(4) a statement as to whether, in the opinion of each such individual, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

SECTION 103. Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee.

In any case where several matters are required to be certified by, or covered by an opinion of, any specified Person, it is not necessary that all such matters be certified by, or covered by the opinion of, only one such Person, or that they be so certified or covered by only one document, but one such Person may certify or give an opinion with respect to some matters and one or more other such Persons as to other matters, and any such Person may certify or give an opinion as to such matters in one or several documents.

Any certificate or opinion of an officer of the Company may be based, insofar as it relates to legal matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, counsel, unless such

7

officer knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to the matters upon which his certificate or opinion is based are erroneous. Any such certificate or opinion of counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to factual matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, an officer or officers of the Company stating that the information with respect to such factual matters is in the possession of the Company, unless such counsel knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to such matters are erroneous.

Where any Person is required to make, give or execute two or more applications, requests, consents, certificates, statements, opinions or other instruments under this Indenture, they may, but need not, be consolidated and form one instrument.

SECTION 104. Acts of Holders; Record Dates.

Whenever in this Indenture it is provided that the Holders of a specified percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any or all series may take action (including the making of any demand or request, the giving of any direction, notice, consent or waiver or the taking of any other action) the fact that at the time of taking any such action the Holders of such specified percentage have joined therein may be evidenced (a) by any instrument or any number of instruments of similar tenor executed by Holders in person or by agent or proxy appointed in writing, (b) by the record of the Holders voting in favor thereof at any meeting of Holders duly called and held in accordance with procedures approved by the Trustee, (c) by a combination of such instrument or instruments and any such record of such a meeting of Holders or (d) in the case of Securities evidenced by a Global Security, by any electronic transmission or other message, whether or not in written format, that complies with the Depository’s applicable procedures. Such evidence (and the action embodied therein and evidenced thereby) are herein sometimes referred to as the “Act” of the relevant Holders. Proof of execution of any such instrument or

of a writing appointing any such agent or proxy shall be sufficient for any purpose of this Indenture and (subject to Section 601) conclusive in favor of the Trustee and the Company, if made in the manner provided in this Section.

The fact and date of the execution by any Person of any such instrument or writing may be proved by the affidavit of a witness of such execution or by a certificate of a notary public or other officer authorized by law to take acknowledgments of deeds, certifying that the individual signing such instrument or writing acknowledged to him the execution thereof. Where such execution is by a signer acting in a capacity other than his individual capacity, such certificate or affidavit shall also constitute sufficient proof of his authority. The fact and date of the execution of any such instrument or writing, or the authority of the Person executing the same, may also be proved in any other manner that the Trustee deems sufficient.

The ownership of Securities shall be proved by the Security Register.

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act of the Holder of any Security shall bind every future Holder of the same Security and the Holder of every Security issued upon the registration of transfer thereof or in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof in respect of anything done, omitted or suffered to be done by the Trustee or the Company in reliance thereon, whether or not notation of such action is made upon such Security.

8

The Company may set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the Holders of Outstanding Securities of any series entitled to give, make or take any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided or permitted by this Indenture to be given, made or taken by Holders of Securities of such series, provided that the Company may not set a record date for, and the provisions of this paragraph shall not apply with respect to, the giving or making of any notice, declaration, request or direction referred to in the next paragraph. If any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Holders of Outstanding Securities of the relevant series on such record date, and no other Holders, shall be entitled to take the relevant action, whether or not such Holders remain Holders after such record date; provided that no such action shall be effective hereunder unless taken on or prior to the applicable Expiration Date by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of such series on such record date. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to prevent the Company from setting a new record date for any action for which a record date has previously been set pursuant to this paragraph (whereupon the record date previously set shall automatically and with no action by any Person be cancelled and of no effect), and nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to render ineffective any action taken by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of the relevant series on the date such action is taken. Promptly after any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Company, at its own expense, shall cause notice of such record date, the proposed action by Holders and the applicable Expiration Date to be given to the Trustee in writing and to each Holder of Securities of the relevant series in the manner set forth in Section 106.

The Trustee may set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the Holders of Outstanding Securities of any series entitled to join in the giving or making of (i) any Notice of Default, (ii) any declaration of acceleration referred to in Section 502, (iii) any request to institute proceedings referred to in Section 507(2) or (iv) any direction referred to in Section 512, in each case with respect to Securities of such series. If any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Holders of Outstanding Securities of such series on such record date, and no other Holders, shall be entitled to join in such notice, declaration, request or direction, whether or not such Holders remain Holders after such record date; provided that no such action shall be effective hereunder unless taken on or prior to the applicable Expiration Date by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of such series on such record date. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to prevent the Trustee from setting a new record date for any action for which a record date has previously been set pursuant to this paragraph (whereupon the record date previously set shall automatically and with no action by any Person be cancelled and of no effect), and nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to render ineffective any action taken by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of the relevant series on the date such action is taken. Promptly after any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Trustee, at the Company's expense, shall cause notice of such record date, the proposed action by Holders and the applicable Expiration Date to be given to the Company in writing and to each Holder of Securities of the relevant series in the manner set forth in Section 106.

With respect to any record date set pursuant to this Section, the party hereto which sets such record dates may designate any day as the "Expiration Date" and from time to time may change the Expiration Date to any earlier or later day; provided that no such change shall be effective unless notice of the proposed new Expiration Date is given to the other party hereto in

9

writing, and to each Holder of Securities of the relevant series in the manner set forth in Section 106, on or prior to the existing Expiration Date. If an Expiration Date is not designated with respect to any record date set pursuant to this Section, the party hereto which set such record date shall be deemed to have initially designated the 180th day after such record date as the Expiration Date with respect thereto, subject to its right to change the Expiration Date as provided in this paragraph. Notwithstanding the foregoing, no Expiration Date shall be later than the 180th day after the applicable record date.

Without limiting the foregoing, a Holder entitled hereunder to take any action hereunder with regard to any particular Security may do so with regard to all or any part of the principal amount of such Security or by one or more duly appointed agents each of which may do so pursuant to such appointment with regard to all or any part of such principal amount.

SECTION 105. Notices, Etc., to Trustee and Company.

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or Act of Holders or other document provided or permitted by this Indenture to be made upon, given or furnished to, or filed with:

(1) the Trustee by any Holder or by the Company shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if made, given, furnished or filed in writing in the English language to or with the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office, Attention: Corporate Trust Department; or

(2) the Company by the Trustee or by any Holder shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing in the English language and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, addressed to it at the address of its principal office specified in the first paragraph of this instrument or at any other address previously furnished in writing to the Trustee by the Company.

SECTION 106. Notice to Holders; Waiver.

Where this Indenture provides for notice to Holders of any event, such notice shall be sufficiently given (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to each Holder affected by such event, at his address as it appears in the Security Register, not later than the latest date (if any), and not earlier than the earliest date (if any), prescribed for the giving of such notice. In any case where notice to Holders is given by mail, neither the failure to mail such notice, nor any defect in any notice so mailed, to any particular Holder shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Holders. Where this Indenture provides for notice in any manner, such notice may be waived in writing by the Person entitled to receive such notice, either before or after the event, and such waiver shall be the equivalent of such notice. Waivers of notice by Holders shall be filed with the Trustee, but such filing shall not be a condition precedent to the validity of any action taken in reliance upon such waiver.

In case by reason of the suspension of regular mail service or by reason of any other cause it shall be impracticable to give such notice by mail, then such notification as shall be made with the approval of the Trustee shall constitute a sufficient notification for every purpose hereunder.

10

SECTION 107. Conflict with Trust Indenture Act.

If any provision hereof limits, qualifies or conflicts with a provision of the Trust Indenture Act which is required under such Act to be a part of and govern this Indenture, the latter provision shall control. If any provision of this Indenture modifies or excludes any provision of the Trust Indenture Act which may be so modified or excluded, the latter provision shall be deemed to apply to this Indenture as so modified or to be excluded, as the case may be.

SECTION 108. Effect of Headings and Table of Contents.

The Article and Section headings herein and the Table of Contents are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

SECTION 109. Successors and Assigns.

All covenants and agreements in this Indenture by the Company shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

SECTION 110. Separability Clause.

In case any provision in this Indenture or the Securities shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforce ability of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

SECTION 111. Benefits of Indenture.

Nothing in this Indenture or the Securities, express or implied, shall give to any Person, other than the parties hereto and their successors hereunder, the holders of Senior Debt and the Holders, any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under this Indenture.

SECTION 112. Governing Law.

This Indenture and the Securities shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of the State of New York.

SECTION 113. Legal Holidays.

In any case where any Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, purchase date or Stated Maturity of any Security shall not be a Business Day at any Place of Payment, then (notwithstanding any other provision of this Indenture or of the Securities (other than a provision of any Security which specifically states that such provision shall apply in lieu of this Section)) payment of interest or principal (and premium, if any) need not be made at such Place of Payment on such date, but may be made on the next succeeding Business Day at such Place of Payment with the same force and effect as if made on the Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date or purchase date, or at the Stated Maturity.

11

ARTICLE TWO SECURITY FORMS

SECTION 201. Forms Generally.

The Securities of each series shall be in substantially the form set forth in this Article, or in such other form as shall be established by or pursuant to a Board Resolution or in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in each case with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as are required or permitted by this Indenture, and may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification and such legends or endorsements placed thereon as may be required to comply with the rules of any securities exchange or Depository therefor or as may, consistently herewith, be determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution thereof. If the form of Securities of any series is established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Company Order contemplated by Section 303 for the authentication and delivery of such Securities.

The definitive Securities shall be printed, lithographed or engraved on steel engraved borders or may be produced in any other manner, all as determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities.

SECTION 202. Form of face of Security.

[Insert any legend required by the Internal Revenue Code and the regulations thereunder.]

No.

\$

Evolution Petroleum Corporation, a corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of Nevada (herein called the "Company," which term includes any successor Person under the Indenture hereinafter referred to), for value received, hereby promises to pay to _____, or registered assigns, the principal sum of _____ Dollars on _____ [if the Security is to bear interest prior to Maturity, insert —, and to pay interest thereon from _____ or from the most recent Interest Payment Date to which interest has been paid or duly provided for, semi-annually on _____ and _____ in each year, commencing _____, at the rate of _____ % per annum, until the principal hereof is paid or made available for payment, provided that any principal and premium, and any such installment of interest, which is overdue shall bear interest at the rate of _____ % per annum (to the extent that the payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable), from the dates such amounts are due until they are paid or made available for payment, and such interest shall be payable on demand. The interest so payable, and punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date will, as provided in such Indenture, be paid to the Person in whose name this Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest, which shall be the _____ or _____ (whether or not a Business Day), as the case may be, next preceding such Interest Payment Date. Any such interest not so punctually paid or duly provided for will forthwith cease to be payable to the Holder on _____

such Regular Record Date and may either be paid to the Person in whose name this Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest to be fixed by the Trustee, notice whereof shall be given to Holders of Securities of this series not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date, or be paid at any time in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which the Securities of this series may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, all as more fully provided in said Indenture].

[If the Security is not to bear interest prior to Maturity, insert — The principal of this Security shall not bear interest except in the case of a default in payment of principal upon acceleration, upon redemption or at Stated Maturity and in such case the overdue principal and any overdue premium shall bear interest at the rate of _____ % per annum (to the extent that the payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable), from the dates such amounts are due until they are paid or made available for payment. Interest on any overdue principal or premium shall be payable on demand. Any such interest on overdue principal or premium which is not paid on demand shall bear interest at the rate of _____ % per annum (to the extent that the payment of such interest on interest shall be legally enforceable), from the date of such demand until the amount so demanded is paid or made available for payment. Interest on any overdue interest shall be payable on demand.]

Payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and [if applicable, insert — any such] interest on this Security will be made at the office or agency of the Company maintained for that purpose in _____, in such coin or currency of the United States of America as at the time of payment is legal tender for payment of public and private debts; provided, however, that at the option of the Company payment of interest may be made by check mailed to the address of the Person entitled thereto as such address shall appear in the Security Register.

Reference is hereby made to the further provisions of this Security set forth on the reverse hereof, which further provisions shall for all purposes have the same effect as if set forth at this place.

Unless the certificate of authentication hereon has been executed by the Trustee referred to on the reverse hereof by manual signature, this Security shall not be entitled to any benefit under the Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this instrument to be duly executed under its corporate seal.

Dated:

Evolution Petroleum Corporation

By _____

Attest:

SECTION 203. Form of Reverse of Security.

This Security is one of a duly authorized issue of securities of the Company (herein called the "Securities"), issued and to be issued in one or more series under an Indenture, dated as of _____, 200____ (herein called the "Indenture", which term shall have the meaning assigned to it in such instrument), among the Company and _____, as Trustee (herein called the "Trustee", which term includes any successor trustee under the Indenture), and reference is hereby made to the Indenture for a statement of the respective rights, limitations of rights, duties and immunities thereunder of the Company, the Trustee, the holders of Senior Debt and the Holders of the Securities and of the terms upon which the Securities are, and are to be, authenticated and delivered. This Security is one of the series designated on the face hereof [if applicable, insert —, limited in aggregate principal amount to \$ _____].

[If applicable, insert — The Securities of this series are subject to redemption upon not less than 30 days' notice by mail, [if applicable, insert — (1) on _____ in any year commencing with the year _____ and ending with the year _____ through operation of the sinking fund for this series at a Redemption _____]

Price equal to 100% of the principal amount, and (2)] at any time [if applicable, insert — on or after _____, 20____], as a whole or in part, at the election of the Company, at the following Redemption Prices (expressed as percentages of the principal amount): If redeemed [if applicable, insert — on or before _____, _____%, and if redeemed] during the 12-month period beginning _____ of the years indicated,

| Year | Redemption Price | Year | Redemption Price |
|------|------------------|------|------------------|
| | | | |
| | | | |

and thereafter at a Redemption Price equal to _____% of the principal amount, together in the case of any such redemption [if applicable, insert — (whether through operation of the sinking fund or otherwise)] with accrued interest to the Redemption Date, but interest installments whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to such Redemption Date will be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, of record at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates referred to on the face hereof, all as provided in the Indenture.]

[If applicable, insert — The Securities of this series are subject to redemption upon not less than 30 days’ notice by mail, (1) on _____ in any year commencing with the year _____ and ending with the year _____ through operation of the sinking fund for this series at the Redemption Prices for redemption through operation of the sinking fund (expressed as percentages of the principal amount) set forth in the table below, and (2) at any time [if applicable, insert — on or after _____], as a whole or in part, at the election of the Company, at the Redemption Prices for redemption otherwise than through operation of the sinking fund (expressed as percentages of the principal amount) set forth in the table below: If redeemed during the 12-month period beginning _____ of the years indicated,

| Year | Redemption Price for Redemption Through Operation of the Sinking Fund | Redemption Price for Redemption Otherwise than Through Operation of the Sinking Fund |
|------|---|--|
| | | |
| | | |

and thereafter at a Redemption Price equal to _____% of the principal amount, together in the case of any such redemption [if applicable, insert — (whether through operation of the sinking fund or otherwise)] with accrued interest to the Redemption Date, but interest installments whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to such Redemption Date will be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, of record at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates referred to on the face hereof, all as provided in the Indenture.]

[If applicable, insert — Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company may not, prior to _____, redeem any Securities of this series as contemplated by [if applicable, insert — clause (2) of] the preceding paragraph as a part of, or in anticipation of, any refunding operation by the application, directly or indirectly, of moneys borrowed having an interest cost to the Company (calculated in accordance with generally accepted financial practice) of less than _____% per annum.]

[If applicable, insert — The sinking fund for this series provides for the redemption on _____ in each year beginning with the year _____ and ending with the year _____ of [if applicable, insert — not less than \$ _____ (“mandatory sinking fund”) and not more than] \$ _____ aggregate principal amount of Securities of this series. Securities of this series acquired or redeemed by the Company otherwise than through [if applicable, insert — mandatory] sinking fund payments may be credited against subsequent [if applicable, insert — mandatory] sinking fund payments otherwise required to be made [if applicable, insert — _____, in the inverse order in which they become due].]

[If the Security is subject to redemption of any kind, insert — In the event of redemption of this Security in part only, a new Security or Securities of this series and of like tenor for the unredeemed portion hereof will be issued in the name of the Holder hereof upon the cancellation hereof.]

The indebtedness evidenced by this Security is, to the extent provided in the Indenture, subordinate and subject in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all Senior Debt of the Company, and this Security is issued subject to the provisions of the Indenture with respect thereto. Each Holder of this Security, by accepting the same, (a) agrees to and shall be bound by such provisions, (b) authorizes and directs the Trustee on his behalf to take such action as may be necessary or appropriate to effectuate the subordination so provided and (c) appoints the Trustee his attorney-in-fact for any and all such purposes.

[If applicable, insert — The Indenture contains provisions for Defeasance at any time of [the entire indebtedness of this Security] [or] [certain restrictive covenants and Events of Default with respect to this Security] [, in each case] upon compliance with certain conditions set forth in the Indenture.]

[If the Security is not an Original Issue Discount Security, insert — If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of this series shall occur and be continuing, the principal of the Securities of this series may be declared due and payable in the manner and with the effect provided in the Indenture.]

[If the Security is an Original Issue Discount Security, insert — If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of this series shall occur and be continuing, an amount of principal of the Securities of this series may be declared due and payable in the manner and with the effect provided in the Indenture. Such amount shall be equal to — insert formula for determining the amount. Upon payment (i) of the amount of principal so declared due and payable and (ii) of interest on any overdue principal, premium and interest (in each case to the extent that the payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable), all of the Company’s obligations in respect of the payment of the principal of and premium and interest, if any, on the Securities of this series shall terminate.]

The Indenture permits, with certain exceptions as therein provided, the amendment thereof and the modification of the rights and obligations of the Company and the rights of the Holders of the Securities of each series to be affected under the Indenture at any time by the Company and the Trustee with the consent of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Securities at the time Outstanding of each series to be affected. The Indenture also contains

provisions permitting the Holders of specified percentages in principal amount of the Securities of each series at the time Outstanding, on behalf of the Holders of all Securities of such series, to waive compliance by the Company with certain provisions of the Indenture and certain past defaults under the Indenture and their consequences. Any such consent or waiver by the Holder of this Security shall be conclusive and binding upon such Holder and upon all future Holders of this Security and of any Security issued upon the registration of transfer hereof or in exchange herefor or in lieu hereof, whether or not notation of such consent or waiver is made upon this Security.

As provided in and subject to the provisions of the Indenture, the Holder of this Security shall not have the right to institute any proceeding with respect to the Indenture or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee or for any other remedy thereunder, unless such Holder shall have previously given the Trustee written notice of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Securities of this series, the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Securities of this series at the time Outstanding shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default as Trustee and offered the Trustee reasonable indemnity, and the Trustee shall not have received from the Holders of a majority in principal amount of Securities of this series at the time Outstanding a direction inconsistent with such request, and shall have failed to institute any such proceeding, for 60 days after receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity. The foregoing shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Holder of this Security for the enforcement of any payment of principal hereof or any premium or interest hereon on or after the respective due dates expressed herein.

No reference herein to the Indenture and no provision of this Security or of the Indenture shall alter or impair the obligation of the Company, which is absolute and unconditional, to pay the principal of and any premium and interest on this Security at the times, place and rate, and in the coin or currency, herein prescribed.

16

As provided in the Indenture and subject to certain limitations therein set forth, the transfer of this Security is registrable in the Security Register, upon surrender of this Security for registration of transfer at the office or agency of the Company in any place where the principal of and any premium and interest on this Security are payable, duly endorsed by, or accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Security Registrar duly executed by, the Holder hereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing, and thereupon one or more new Securities of this series and of like tenor, of authorized denominations and for the same aggregate principal amount, will be issued to the designated transferee or transferees.

The Securities of this series are issuable only in registered form without coupons in denominations of \$ _____ and any integral multiple thereof. As provided in the Indenture and subject to certain limitations therein set forth, Securities of this series are exchangeable for a like aggregate principal amount of Securities of this series and of like tenor of a different authorized denomination, as requested by the Holder surrendering the same.

No service charge shall be made for any such registration of transfer or exchange, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge payable in connection therewith.

Prior to due presentment of this Security for registration of transfer, the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee may treat the Person in whose name this Security is registered as the owner hereof for all purposes, whether or not this Security be overdue, and neither the Company, the Trustee nor any such agent shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

All terms used in this Security which are defined in the Indenture shall have the meanings assigned to them in the Indenture.

SECTION 204. [Intentionally Omitted]

SECTION 205. Form of Legend for Global Securities.

Unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301 for the Securities evidenced thereby, every Global Security authenticated and delivered hereunder shall bear a legend in substantially the following form:

THIS SECURITY IS A GLOBAL SECURITY WITHIN THE MEANING OF THE INDENTURE HEREINAFTER REFERRED TO AND IS REGISTERED IN THE NAME OF A DEPOSITARY OR A NOMINEE THEREOF. THIS SECURITY MAY NOT BE EXCHANGED IN WHOLE OR IN PART FOR A SECURITY REGISTERED, AND NO TRANSFER OF THIS SECURITY IN WHOLE OR IN PART MAY BE REGISTERED, IN THE NAME OF ANY PERSON OTHER THAN SUCH DEPOSITARY OR A NOMINEE THEREOF, EXCEPT IN THE LIMITED CIRCUMSTANCES DESCRIBED IN THE INDENTURE.

17

SECTION 206. Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication.

The Trustee's certificates of authentication shall be in substantially the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

As Trustee

By _____
Authorized Officer

ARTICLE THREE
THE SECURITIES

SECTION 301. Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series.

The aggregate principal amount of Securities which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited.

The Securities may be issued in one or more series. There shall be established in or pursuant to a Board Resolution and, subject to Section 303, set forth, or determined in the manner provided, in an Officers' Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, prior to the issuance of Securities of any series,

(1) the title of the Securities of the series (which shall distinguish the Securities of the series from Securities of any other series);

(2) [Intentionally Omitted]

(3) any change to the subordination provisions which applies to the Securities of the series from those contained in Article Twelve with respect to the Securities and the definitions of Senior Debt and Designated Senior Debt which shall apply to the Securities of the series;

(4) any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of the series which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of the series pursuant to Section 304, 305, 306, 906 or 1107 and except for any Securities which, pursuant to Section 303, are deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder);

(5) the Person to whom any interest on a Security of the series shall be payable, if other than the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest;

18

(6) the date or dates on which the principal of any Securities of the series is payable;

(7) the rate or rates at which any Securities of the series shall bear interest, if any, the date or dates from which any such interest shall accrue, the Interest Payment Dates on which any such interest shall be payable and the Regular Record Date for any such interest payable on any Interest Payment Date;

(8) the place or places where the principal of and any premium and interest on any Securities of the series shall be payable;

(9) the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which any Securities of the series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company and, if other than by a Board Resolution, the manner in which any election by the Company to redeem the Securities shall be evidenced;

(10) the obligation, if any, of the Company to redeem or purchase any Securities of the series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provisions or at the option of the Holder thereof and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which any Securities of the series shall be redeemed or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;

(11) if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof, the denominations in which any Securities of the series shall be issuable;

(12) if the amount of principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of the series may be determined with reference to an index or pursuant to a formula, the manner in which such amounts shall be determined;

(13) if other than the currency of the United States of America, the currency, currencies or currency units in which the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of the series shall be payable and the manner of determining the equivalent thereof in the currency of the United States of America for any purpose, including for purposes of the definition of "Outstanding" in Section 101;

(14) if the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of the series is to be payable, at the election of the Company or the Holder thereof, in one or more currencies or currency units other than that or those in which such Securities are stated to be payable, the currency, currencies or currency units in which the principal of or any premium or interest on such Securities as to which such election is made shall be payable, the periods within which and the terms and conditions upon which such election is to be made and the amount so payable (or the manner in which such amount shall be determined);

(15) if other than the entire principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of any Securities of the series which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 502;

19

(16) if the principal amount payable at the Stated Maturity of any Securities of the series will not be determinable as of any one or more dates prior to the Stated Maturity, the amount which shall be deemed to be the principal amount of such Securities as of any such date for any purpose thereunder or hereunder, including the principal amount thereof which shall be due and payable upon any Maturity other than the Stated Maturity or which shall be deemed to be Outstanding as of any date prior to the Stated Maturity (or, in any such case, the manner in which such amount deemed to be the principal amount shall be determined);

(17) if applicable, that the Securities of the series, in whole or any specified part, shall be defeasible pursuant to Section 1502 or Section 1503 or both such Sections and, if other than by a Board Resolution, the manner in which any election by the Company to defease such Securities shall be evidenced;

(18) if applicable, that any Securities of the series shall be issuable in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities and, in such case, the respective Depositories for such Global Securities, the form of any legend or legends which shall be borne by any such Global Security in addition to or in lieu of that set forth in Section 205 and any circumstances in addition to or in lieu of those set forth in clause (2) of the last paragraph of Section 305 in which any such Global Security may be exchanged in whole or in part for Securities registered, and any transfer of such Global Security in whole or in part may be registered, in the name or names of Persons other than the Depository for such Global Security or a nominee thereof;

(19) any addition to or change in the Events of Default which applies to any Securities of the series and any change in the right of the Trustee or the requisite Holders of such Securities to declare the principal amount thereof due and payable pursuant to Section 502;

(20) any addition to or change in the covenants set forth in Article Ten which applies to Securities of the series;

(21) whether the Securities of the series will be convertible into Capital Stock (or cash in lieu thereof) and, if so, the terms and conditions upon which such conversion will be effected; and

(22) any other terms of the series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture, except as permitted by Section 901(5)).

All Securities of any one series shall be substantially identical except as to denomination and except as may otherwise be provided in or pursuant to the Board Resolution referred to above and (subject to Section 303) set forth, or determined in the manner provided, in the Officers' Certificate referred to above or in any such indenture supplemental hereto.

If any of the terms of the series are established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Officers' Certificate setting forth the terms of the series.

The Securities shall be subordinated in right of payment to Senior Debt of the Company as provided in Article Twelve.

SECTION 302. Denominations.

The Securities of each series shall be issuable only in registered form without coupons and only in such denominations as shall be specified as contemplated by Section 301. In the absence of any such specified denomination with respect to the Securities of any series, the Securities of such series shall be issuable in denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof.

SECTION 303. Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating.

The Securities shall be executed on behalf of the Company by its Chairman of the Board of Directors, its Vice Chairman of the Board of Directors, its President or one of its Vice Presidents. If its corporate seal is reproduced thereon, then it shall be attested by its Secretary or one of its Assistant Secretaries. The signature of any of these officers on the Securities may be manual or facsimile.

Securities bearing the manual or facsimile signatures of individuals who were at any time the proper officers of the Company shall bind the Company, notwithstanding that such individuals or any of them have ceased to hold such offices prior to the authentication and delivery of such Securities or did not hold such offices at the date of such Securities.

At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities of any series executed by the Company, together with a Company Order for the authentication and delivery of such Securities, and the Trustee in accordance with the Company Order shall authenticate and deliver such Securities. If the form or terms of the Securities of the series have been established by or pursuant to one or more Board Resolutions as permitted by Sections 201 and 301, in authenticating such Securities, and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 601) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating,

(1) if the form of such Securities has been established by or pursuant to Board Resolution as permitted by Section 201, that such form has been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture;

(2) if the terms of such Securities have been established by or pursuant to Board Resolution as permitted by Section 301, that such terms have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture; and

(3) that such Securities, when authenticated and delivered by the Trustee and issued by the Company in the manner and subject to any conditions specified in such Opinion of Counsel, will constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company, enforceable in accordance with their terms, subject to bankruptcy, insolvency, fraudulent transfer, reorganization, moratorium and similar laws of general applicability relating to or affecting creditors' rights and to general equity principles.

If such form or terms have been so established, the Trustee shall not be required to authenticate such Securities if the issue of such Securities pursuant to this Indenture will affect the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture or otherwise in a manner which is not reasonably acceptable to the Trustee.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 301 and of the preceding paragraph, if all Securities of a series are not to be originally issued at one time, it shall not be necessary to deliver the Officers' Certificate otherwise required pursuant to Section 301 or the Company Order and Opinion of Counsel otherwise required pursuant to such preceding paragraph at or prior to the authentication of each Security of such series if such documents are delivered at or prior to the authentication upon original issuance of the first Security of such series to be issued.

Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication.

No Security shall be entitled to any benefit under this Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose unless there appears on such Security a certificate of authentication substantially in the form provided for herein executed by the Trustee by manual signature, and such certificate upon any Security shall be conclusive evidence, and the only evidence, that such Security has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if

any Security shall have been authenticated and delivered hereunder but never issued and sold by the Company, and the Company shall deliver such Security to the Trustee for cancellation as provided in Section 309, for all purposes of this Indenture such Security shall be deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder and shall never be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture.

SECTION 304. Temporary Securities.

Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and upon Company Order the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities which are printed, lithographed, typewritten, mimeographed or otherwise produced, in any authorized denomination, substantially of the tenor of the definitive Securities and with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as the officers executing such Securities may determine, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities.

If temporary Securities of any series are issued, the Company will cause definitive Securities of that series to be prepared without unreasonable delay. After the preparation of definitive Securities of such series, the temporary Securities of such series shall be exchangeable for definitive Securities of such series upon surrender of the temporary Securities of such series at the office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment for that series, without charge to the Holder. Upon surrender for cancellation of any one or more temporary Securities of any series, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor one or more definitive Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of like tenor and aggregate principal amount. Until so exchanged, the temporary Securities of any series shall in all respects be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such series and tenor.

22

SECTION 305. Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange.

The Company shall cause to be kept at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee a register (the register maintained in such office and in any other office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment being herein sometimes collectively referred to as the "Security Register") in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall provide for the registration of Securities and of transfers of Securities. The Trustee is hereby appointed "Security Registrar" for the purpose of registering Securities and transfers of Securities as herein provided.

Upon surrender for registration of transfer of any Security of a series at the office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment for that series, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in the name of the designated transferee or transferees, one or more new Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of like tenor and aggregate principal amount.

At the option of the Holder, Securities of any series may be exchanged for other Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of like tenor and aggregate principal amount, upon surrender of the Securities to be exchanged at such office or agency. Whenever any Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, the Securities which the Holder making the exchange is entitled to receive.

All Securities issued upon any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities shall be the valid obligations of the Company, evidencing the same debt, and entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture, as the Securities surrendered upon such registration of transfer or exchange.

Every Security presented or surrendered for registration of transfer or for exchange shall (if so required by the Company or the Trustee) be duly endorsed, or be accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Security Registrar duly executed, by the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing.

No service charge shall be made for any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 304, 906, 1107 or otherwise not involving any transfer.

If the Securities of any series (or of any series and specified tenor) are to be redeemed in part, the Company shall not be required (A) to issue, register the transfer of or exchange any Securities of that series (or of that series and specified tenor, as the case may be) during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of the mailing of a notice of redemption of any such Securities selected for redemption under Section 1103 and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, or (B) to register the transfer of or exchange any Security so selected for redemption in whole or in part, except the unredeemed portion of any Security being redeemed in part.

23

The provisions of clauses (1), (2), (3) and (4) below shall apply only to Global Securities:

(1) Each Global Security authenticated under this Indenture shall be registered in the name of the Depositary designated for such Global Security or a nominee thereof and delivered to such Depositary or a nominee thereof or custodian therefor, and each such Global Security shall constitute a single Security for all purposes of this Indenture.

(2) Notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture, no Global Security may be exchanged in whole or in part for Securities registered, and no transfer of a Global Security in whole or in part may be registered, in the name of any Person other than the Depositary for such Global Security or a nominee thereof unless (A) such Depositary (i) has notified the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depositary for such Global Security or (ii) has ceased to be a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act, and in either case the Company fails to appoint a successor Depositary within 90 days, (B) there shall have occurred and be continuing an Event of Default with respect to such Global Security and the Depositary shall have notified the Trustee of its decision to exchange such Global Security for Securities in certificated form or (C) there shall exist such circumstances, if any, in addition to or in lieu of the foregoing as have been specified for this purpose as contemplated by Section 301.

(3) Subject to clause (2) above, any exchange of a Global Security for other Securities may be made in whole or in part, and all Securities issued in exchange for a Global Security or any portion thereof shall be registered in such names as the Depositary for such Global Security shall direct.

(4) Every Security authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for or in lieu of, a Global Security or any portion thereof, whether pursuant to this Section, Section 304, 306, 906 or 1107 or otherwise, shall be authenticated and delivered in the form of, and shall be, a Global Security, unless such Security is registered in the name of a Person other than the Depositary for such Global Security or a nominee thereof.

SECTION 306. Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities.

If any mutilated Security is surrendered to the Trustee, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a new Security of the same series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

If there shall be delivered to the Company and the Trustee (i) evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Security and (ii) such Security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them and any agent of either of them harmless, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Trustee that such Security has been acquired by a bona fide purchaser, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in lieu of any such destroyed, lost or stolen Security, a new Security of the same series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

24

In case any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security has become or is about to become due and payable, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new Security, pay such Security.

Upon the issuance of any new Security under this Section, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith.

Every new Security of any series issued pursuant to this Section in lieu of any destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall constitute an original additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of that series duly issued hereunder.

The provisions of this Section are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities.

SECTION 307. Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved.

Except as otherwise provided as contemplated by Section 301 with respect to any series of Securities, interest on any Security which is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date shall be paid to the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest.

Any interest on any Security of any series which is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date (herein called "Defaulted Interest") shall forthwith cease to be payable to the Holder on the relevant Regular Record Date by virtue of having been such Holder, and such Defaulted Interest may be paid by the Company, at its election in each case, as provided in clause (1) or (2) below:

(1) The Company may elect to make payment of any Defaulted Interest to the Persons in whose names the Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner. The Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each Security of such series and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this clause provided. Thereupon the Trustee shall fix a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall be not more than 15 days and not less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the

25

proposed payment. The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company of such Special Record Date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor to be given to each Holder of Securities of such series in the manner set forth in Section 106, not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor having been so mailed, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose names the Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on such Special Record Date and shall no longer be payable pursuant to the following clause (2).

(2) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on the Securities of any series in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Securities may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this clause, such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee.

Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section, each Security delivered under this Indenture upon registration of transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, which were carried by such other Security.

SECTION 308. Persons Deemed Owners.

Prior to due presentment of a Security for registration of transfer, the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee may treat the Person in whose name such Security is registered as the owner of such Security for the purpose of receiving payment of principal of and any premium and (subject to Section 307) any interest on such Security and for all other purposes whatsoever, whether or not such Security be overdue, and neither the Company, the Trustee nor any agent of the Company or the Trustee shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

SECTION 309. Cancellation.

All Securities surrendered for payment, redemption, purchase, registration of transfer or exchange or for credit against any sinking fund payment shall, if surrendered to any Person other than the Trustee, be delivered to the Trustee and shall be promptly cancelled by it. The Company may at any time deliver to the Trustee for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated and delivered hereunder which the Company may have acquired in any manner whatsoever, and may deliver to the Trustee (or to any other Person for delivery to the Trustee) for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated hereunder which the Company has not issued and sold, and all Securities so delivered shall be promptly cancelled by the Trustee. No Securities shall be authenticated in lieu of or in exchange for any Securities cancelled as provided in this Section, except as expressly permitted by this Indenture. All cancelled Securities held by the Trustee shall be disposed of as directed by a Company Order.

26

SECTION 310. Computation of Interest.

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301 for Securities of any series, interest on the Securities of each series shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

ARTICLE FOUR
SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE

SECTION 401. Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture.

This Indenture shall upon Company Request cease to be of further effect (except as to any surviving rights of conversion, registration of transfer or exchange of Securities herein expressly provided for) with respect to the Securities of any series, and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, when

(1) either

(A) all Securities of such series theretofore authenticated and delivered (other than (i) Securities of such series which have been destroyed, lost or stolen and which have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 306 and (ii) Securities of such series for whose payment money has theretofore been deposited in trust or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereafter repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in Section 1003) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or

(B) all such Securities of such series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation

(i) have become due and payable, or

(ii) will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year, or

(iii) are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption by the Trustee in the name, and at the expense, of the Company, and the Company, in the case of (i), (ii) or (iii) above, has deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust for the purpose money in an amount sufficient to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, for principal and any premium and interest to the date of such deposit (in the case of Securities which have become due and payable) or to the Stated Maturity or Redemption Date, as the case may be;

27

(2) the Company has paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company; and

(3) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture have been complied with.

Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, the obligations of the Company to the Trustee under Section 607, the obligations of the Trustee to any Authenticating Agent under Section 614 and, if money shall have been deposited with the Trustee pursuant to subclause (B) of clause (1) of this Section, the obligations of the Trustee under Section 402 and the last paragraph of Section 1003 shall survive.

SECTION 402. Application of Trust Money.

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 1003, all money deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 401 shall be held in trust and applied by it, in accordance with the provisions of the Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Persons entitled thereto, of the principal and any premium and interest for whose payment such money has been deposited with the Trustee.

ARTICLE FIVE
REMEDIES

SECTION 501. Events of Default.

"Event of Default", wherever used herein with respect to Securities of any series, means any one of the following events (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether it shall be occasioned by the provisions of Article Twelve or be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree or order of any court or any order, rule or regulation of any administrative or governmental body):

(1) default in the payment of any interest upon any Security of that series when it becomes due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 30 days; or

(2) default in the payment of the principal of or any premium on any Security of that series at its Maturity; or

(3) default in the deposit of any sinking fund payment, when and as due by the terms of a Security of that series; or

(4) default in the performance, or breach, of any covenant of the Company in Article Eight of this Indenture; or

(5) default in the performance, or breach, of any covenant or warranty of the Company in this Indenture (other than a covenant or warranty a default in whose

28

performance or whose breach is elsewhere in this Section specifically dealt with or which has expressly been included in this Indenture solely for the benefit of series of Securities other than that series), and continuance of such default or breach for a period of 60 days after there has been given, by registered or certified mail, to the Company by the Trustee or to the Company and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series a written notice specifying such default or breach and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a "Notice of Default" hereunder; or

(6) the entry by a court having jurisdiction in the premises of (A) a decree or order for relief in respect of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary in an involuntary case or proceeding under any applicable Federal or State bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or (B) a decree or order adjudging the Company or any Significant Subsidiary as bankrupt or insolvent, or approving as properly filed a petition seeking reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition of or in respect of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary under any applicable Federal or State law, or appointing a custodian, receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator or other similar official of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary or of any substantial part of its or their property, or ordering the winding up or liquidation of its or their affairs, and the continuance of any such decree or order for relief or any such other decree or order unstayed and in effect for a period of 60 consecutive days; or

(7) the commencement by the Company or any Significant Subsidiary of a voluntary case or proceeding under any applicable Federal or State bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or of any other case or proceeding to be adjudicated a bankrupt or insolvent, or the consent by it or them to the entry of a decree or order for relief in respect of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary in an involuntary case or proceeding under any applicable Federal or State bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or to the commencement of any bankruptcy or insolvency case or proceeding against it or them, or the filing by it or them of a petition or answer or consent seeking reorganization or relief under any applicable Federal or State law, or the consent by it or them to the filing of such petition or to the appointment of or taking possession by a custodian, receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator or other similar official of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary or of any substantial part of its or their property, or the making by it or them of an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or the admission by it or them in writing of its or their inability to pay its or their debts generally as they become due, or the taking of corporate action by the Company or any Significant Subsidiary in furtherance of any such action; or

(8) [Intentionally Omitted]

(9) any other Event of Default provided with respect to Securities of that series.

29

SECTION 502. Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment.

If an Event of Default (other than an Event of Default with respect to the Company specified in Section 501(6) or 501(7)) with respect to Securities of any series at the time Outstanding occurs and is continuing, then in every such case the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series may declare the principal amount of all the Securities of that series (or, if any Securities of that series are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount of such Securities as may be specified by the terms thereof) to be due and payable immediately, by a notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by Holders), and upon any such declaration such principal amount (or specified amount) shall become immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default with respect to the Company specified in Section 501(6) or 501 (7) with respect to Securities of any series at the time Outstanding occurs, the principal amount of all the Securities of that series (or, if any Securities of that series are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount of such Securities as may be specified by the terms thereof) shall automatically, and without any declaration or other action on the part of the Trustee or any Holder, become immediately due and payable.

At any time after such a declaration of acceleration with respect to Securities of any series has been made and before a judgment or decree for payment of the money due has been obtained by the Trustee as hereinafter in this Article provided, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if

(1) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay

(A) all overdue interest on all Securities of that series,

(B) the principal of (and premium, if any, on) any Securities of that series which have become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration and any interest thereon at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities,

(C) to the extent that payment of such interest is lawful, interest upon overdue interest at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, and

(D) all sums paid or advanced by the Trustee hereunder and the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel;

and

(2) all Events of Default with respect to Securities of that series, other than the non-payment of the principal of Securities of that series which has become due solely by such declaration of acceleration, have been cured or waived as provided in Section 513.

No such rescission shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

30

SECTION 503. Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee.

The Company covenants that if

(1) default is made in the payment of any interest on any Security when such interest becomes due and payable and such default continues for a period of 30 days, or

(2) default is made in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any Security at the Maturity thereof,

the Company will, upon demand of the Trustee, pay to it, for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities, the whole amount then due and payable on such Securities for principal and any premium and interest and, to the extent that payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable, interest on any overdue principal and premium and on any overdue interest, at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel.

If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any series occurs and is continuing, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any such rights, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted herein, or to enforce any other proper remedy.

SECTION 504. Trustee May File Proofs of Claim.

In case of any judicial proceeding relative to the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities, or the property or creditors of the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities, the Trustee shall be entitled and empowered, by intervention in such proceeding or otherwise, to take any and all actions authorized under the Trust Indenture Act in order to have claims of the Holders and the Trustee allowed in any such proceeding. In particular, the Trustee shall be authorized to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims and to distribute the same; and any custodian, receiver, assignee, trustee, liquidator, sequestrator or other similar official in any such judicial proceeding is hereby authorized by each Holder to make such payments to the Trustee and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to the Holders, to pay to the Trustee any amount due it for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, and any other amounts due the Trustee under Section 607.

No provision of this Indenture shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Holder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities or the rights of any Holder thereof or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Holder in any such proceeding; provided, however, that the Trustee may, on behalf of the Holders, vote for the election of a trustee in bankruptcy or similar official and be a member of a creditors' or other similar committee.

31

SECTION 505. Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities.

All rights of action and claims under this Indenture or the Securities may be prosecuted and enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of the Securities or the production thereof in any proceeding relating thereto, and any such proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for the payment of the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities in respect of which such judgment has been recovered.

SECTION 506. Application of Money Collected.

Any money collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such money on account of principal or any premium or interest, upon presentation of the Securities and the notation thereon of the payment if only partially paid and upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

FIRST: To the payment of all amounts due the Trustee under Section 607; and

SECOND: Subject to Article Twelve, to the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid for principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal and any premium and interest, respectively.

SECTION 507. Limitation on Suits.

No Holder of any Security of any series shall have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to this Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless

(1) such Holder has previously given written notice to the Trustee of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Securities of that series;

(2) the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default in its own name as Trustee hereunder;

(3) such Holder or Holders have offered to the Trustee reasonable indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request;

(4) the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity has failed to institute any such proceeding; and

(5) no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the Trustee during such 60-day period by the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series;

it being understood and intended that no one or more of such Holders shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of, or by availing of, any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other of such Holders, or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over any other of such Holders or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal and ratable benefit of all of such Holders.

SECTION 508. Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest.

Notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture, the Holder of any Security shall have the right, which is absolute and unconditional, to receive payment of the principal of and any premium and (subject to Section 307) interest on such Security on the respective Stated Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption or offer by the Company to purchase the Securities pursuant to the terms of this Indenture, on the Redemption Date or purchase date, as applicable) and to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment, and such rights shall not be impaired without the consent of such Holder.

SECTION 509. Restoration of Rights and Remedies.

If the Trustee or any Holder has instituted any proceeding to enforce any right or remedy under this Indenture and such proceeding has been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, or has been determined adversely to the Trustee or to such Holder, then and in every such case, subject to any determination in such proceeding, the Company, the Trustee and the Holders shall be restored severally and respectively to their former positions hereunder and thereafter all rights and remedies of the Trustee and the Holders shall continue as though no such proceeding had been instituted.

SECTION 510. Rights and Remedies Cumulative.

Except as otherwise provided with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities in the last paragraph of Section 306, no right or remedy herein conferred upon or reserved to the Trustee or to the Holders is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given hereunder or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy hereunder, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

SECTION 511. Delay or Omission Not Waiver.

No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any Holder of any Securities to exercise any right or remedy accruing upon any Event of Default shall impair any such right or remedy or constitute a waiver of any such Event of Default or an acquiescence therein. Every right and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or to the Holders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as may be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Holders, as the case may be.

SECTION 512. Control by Holders.

The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee, with respect to the Securities of such series, provided that

(1) such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture, and

(2) the Trustee may take any other action deemed proper by the Trustee which is not inconsistent with such direction.

SECTION 513. Waiver of Past Defaults.

The Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series may on behalf of the Holders of all the Securities of such series waive any past default hereunder with respect to such series and its consequences, except a default

(1) in the payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Security of such series (including any Security which is required to have been purchased by the Company pursuant to an offer to purchase by the Company made pursuant to the terms of this Indenture), or

(2) in respect of a covenant or provision hereof which under Article Nine cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security of such series affected.

Upon any such waiver, such default shall cease to exist, and any Event of Default arising therefrom shall be deemed to have been cured, for every purpose of this Indenture; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or impair any right consequent thereon.

SECTION 514. Undertaking for Costs.

In any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted by it as Trustee, a court may require any party litigant in such suit to file an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and may assess costs against any such party litigant, in the manner and to the extent provided in the Trust Indenture Act; provided, however, that neither this Section nor the Trust Indenture Act shall be deemed to authorize any court to require such an undertaking or to make such an assessment in any suit instituted by the Company.

SECTION 515. Waiver of Usury, Stay or Extension Laws.

The Company covenants (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) that it will not at any time insist upon, or plead, or in any manner whatsoever claim or take the benefit or advantage of, any usury, stay or extension law wherever enacted, now or at any time hereafter in force, which may affect the covenants or the performance of this Indenture; and the Company (to the extent

that it may lawfully do so) hereby expressly waives all benefit or advantage of any such law and covenants that it will not hinder, delay or impede the execution of any power herein granted to the Trustee, but will suffer and permit the execution of every such power as though no such law had been enacted.

ARTICLE SIX THE TRUSTEE

SECTION 601. Certain Duties and Responsibilities.

The duties and responsibilities of the Trustee shall be as provided by the Trust Indenture Act. Notwithstanding the foregoing, no provision of this Indenture shall require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur any financial liability in the performance of any of its duties hereunder, or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers, if it shall have reasonable grounds for believing that repayment of such funds or adequate indemnity against such risk or liability is not reasonably assured to it. Whether or not therein expressly so provided, every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct or affecting the liability of or affording protection to the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of this Section.

SECTION 602. Notice of Defaults.

If a default occurs hereunder with respect to Securities of any series, the Trustee shall give the Holders of Securities of such series notice of such default as and to the extent provided by the Trust Indenture Act; provided, however, that in the case of any default of the character specified in Section 501(4) with respect to Securities of such series, no such notice to Holders shall be given until at least 30 days after the occurrence thereof. For the purpose of this Section, the term "default" means any event which is, or after notice or lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default with respect to Securities of such series.

SECTION 603. Certain Rights of Trustee.

Subject to the provisions of Section 601:

(1) the Trustee may rely and shall be protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;

(2) any request or direction of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Company Request or Company Order, and any resolution of the Board of Directors shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution;

(3) whenever in the administration of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking, suffering or omitting any action hereunder, the Trustee (unless other evidence be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of bad faith on its part, rely upon an Officers' Certificate;

(4) the Trustee may consult with counsel and the written advice of such counsel or any Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon;

(5) the Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Holders pursuant to this Indenture, unless such Holders shall have offered to the Trustee reasonable security or indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities which might be incurred by it in compliance with such request or direction;

(6) the Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document, but the Trustee, in its discretion, may make such further inquiry or investigation into such facts or matters as it may see fit, and, if the Trustee shall determine to make such further inquiry or investigation, it shall be entitled to examine the books, records and premises of the Company, personally or by agent or attorney; and

(7) the Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder.

SECTION 604. Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities.

The recitals contained herein and in the Securities, except the Trustee's certificates of authentication, shall be taken as the statements of the Company and neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent assumes any responsibility for their correctness. The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities. Neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent shall be accountable for the use or application by the Company of Securities or the proceeds thereof.

SECTION 605. May Hold Securities.

The Trustee, any Authenticating Agent, any Paying Agent, any Security Registrar or any other agent of the Company, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and, subject to Sections 608 and 613, may otherwise deal with the Company with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee, Authenticating Agent, Paying Agent, Security Registrar or such other agent.

SECTION 606. Money Held in Trust.

Money held by the Trustee in trust hereunder need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest on any money received by it hereunder except as otherwise agreed with the Company.

36

SECTION 607. Compensation and Reimbursement.

The Company agrees

(1) to pay to the Trustee from time to time reasonable compensation for all services rendered by it hereunder (which compensation shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust);

(2) except as otherwise expressly provided herein, to reimburse the Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustee in accordance with any provision of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its agents and counsel), except any such expense, disbursement or advance as may be attributable to its negligence or bad faith; and

(3) to indemnify the Trustee for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense incurred without negligence or bad faith on its part, arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of the trust or trusts hereunder, including the costs and expenses of defending itself against any claim or liability in connection with the exercise or performance of any of its powers or duties hereunder.

SECTION 608. Conflicting Interests.

If the Trustee has or shall acquire a conflicting interest within the meaning of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee shall either eliminate such interest or resign, to the extent and in the manner provided by, and subject to the provisions of, the Trust Indenture Act and this Indenture. To the extent permitted by such Act, the Trustee shall not be deemed to have a conflicting interest by virtue of being a trustee under this Indenture with respect to Securities of more than one series.

SECTION 609. Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility.

There shall at all times be one (and only one) Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of each series, which may be Trustee hereunder for Securities of one or more other series. Each Trustee shall be a Person that is eligible pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act to act as such, and has a combined capital and surplus of at least \$50,000,000. If any such Person publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of its supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section and to the extent permitted by the Trust Indenture Act, the combined capital and surplus of such Person shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, it shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect hereinafter specified in this Article.

37

SECTION 610. Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor.

No resignation or removal of the Trustee and no appointment of a successor Trustee pursuant to this Article shall become effective until the acceptance of appointment by the successor Trustee in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 611.

The Trustee may resign at any time with respect to the Securities of one or more series by giving written notice thereof to the Company. If the instrument of acceptance by a successor Trustee required by Section 611 shall not have been delivered to the Trustee within 30 days after the giving of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series.

The Trustee may be removed at any time with respect to the Securities of any series by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series, delivered to the Trustee and to the Company.

If at any time:

(1) the Trustee shall fail to comply with Section 608 after written request therefor by the Company or by any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months, or

(2) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible under Section 609 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any such Holder, or

(3) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation,

then, in any such case, (A) the Company by a Board Resolution may remove the Trustee with respect to all Securities, or (B) subject to Section 514, any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee with respect to all Securities and the appointment of a successor Trustee or Trustees.

If the Trustee shall resign, be removed or become incapable of acting, or if a vacancy shall occur in the office of Trustee for any cause, with respect to the Securities of one or more series, the Company, by a Board Resolution, shall promptly appoint a successor Trustee or Trustees with respect to the Securities of that or those series (it being understood that any such successor Trustee may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more or all of such series and that at any time there shall be only one Trustee with respect to the Securities of any particular series) and shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 611. If, within one year after such resignation, removal or incapability, or the occurrence of such vacancy, a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall be appointed by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series delivered to the Company and the retiring Trustee, the successor Trustee so appointed shall, forthwith upon its acceptance of such appointment in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 611, become the

successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series and to that extent supersede the successor Trustee appointed by the Company. If no successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall have been so appointed by the Company or the Holders and accepted appointment in the manner required by Section 611, any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series.

The Company shall give notice of each resignation and each removal of the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series and each appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series to all Holders of Securities of such series in the manner provided in Section 106. Each notice shall include the name of the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series and the address of its Corporate Trust Office.

SECTION 611. Acceptance of Appointment by Successor.

In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to all Securities, every such successor Trustee so appointed shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the retiring Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective and such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee; but, on the request of the Company or the successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall, upon payment of its charges, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor Trustee all the rights, powers and trusts of the retiring Trustee and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder.

In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the retiring Trustee and each successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto wherein each successor Trustee shall accept such appointment and which (1) shall contain such provisions as shall be necessary or desirable to transfer and confirm to, and to vest in, each successor Trustee all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates, (2) if the retiring Trustee is not retiring with respect to all Securities, shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series as to which the retiring Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the retiring Trustee, and (3) shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust and that each such Trustee shall be trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee; and upon the execution and delivery of such supplemental indenture the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective to the extent provided therein and each such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall

become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates; but, on request of the Company or any successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates.

Upon request of any such successor Trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor Trustee all such rights, powers and trusts referred to in the first or second preceding paragraph, as the case may be.

No successor Trustee shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor Trustee shall be qualified and eligible under this Article.

SECTION 612. Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business.

Any Person into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any Person resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any Person succeeding to all or substantially all the corporate trust business of the Trustee, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, provided such Person shall be otherwise qualified and eligible under this Article, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto. As soon as practicable, the successor Trustee shall mail a notice of its succession to the Holders of the Securities then outstanding. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated, but not delivered, by the Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities.

SECTION 613. Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company.

If and when the Trustee shall be or become a creditor of the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities, the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act regarding the collection of claims against the Company or any such other obligor.

SECTION 614. Appointment of Authenticating Agent.

The Trustee may appoint an Authenticating Agent or Agents with respect to one or more series of Securities which shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series issued upon original issue and upon exchange, registration of transfer or partial redemption thereof or pursuant to Section 306, and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. Wherever reference is made in this Indenture to the authentication and delivery of Securities by the Trustee or the Trustee's certificate of authentication, such reference shall be deemed to include authentication and delivery on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent and a certificate of authentication executed on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent. Each Authenticating Agent shall be acceptable to the Company and shall at all times be a Person organized and doing business under the laws of the

United States of America, any State thereof or the District of Columbia, authorized under such laws to act as Authenticating Agent, having a combined capital and surplus of not less than \$50,000,000 and subject to supervision or examination by Federal or State authority. If such Authenticating Agent publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of said supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such Authenticating Agent shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time an Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, such Authenticating Agent shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in this Section.

Any Person into which an Authenticating Agent may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any Person resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which such Authenticating Agent shall be a party, or any Person succeeding to the corporate agency or corporate trust business of an Authenticating Agent, shall continue to be an Authenticating Agent, provided such Person shall be otherwise eligible under this Section, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of the Trustee or the Authenticating Agent.

An Authenticating Agent may resign at any time by giving written notice thereof to the Trustee and to the Company. The Trustee may at any time terminate the agency of an Authenticating Agent by giving written notice thereof to such Authenticating Agent and to the Company. Upon receiving such a notice of resignation or upon such a termination, or in case at any time such Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustee may appoint a successor Authenticating Agent which shall be acceptable to the Company and shall give notice of such appointment in the manner provided in Section 106 to all Holders of Securities of the series with respect to which such Authenticating Agent will serve. Any successor Authenticating Agent upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder, with like effect as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent. No successor Authenticating Agent shall be appointed unless eligible under the provisions of this Section.

The Trustee agrees to pay to each Authenticating Agent from time to time reasonable compensation for its services under this Section, and the Trustee shall be entitled to be reimbursed for such payments, subject to the provisions of Section 607.

If an appointment with respect to one or more series is made pursuant to this Section, the Securities of such series may have endorsed thereon, in addition to the Trustee's certificate of authentication, an alternative certificate of authentication in the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

_____,
As Trustee

By _____,
As Authenticating Agent

By _____,
Authorized Officer

ARTICLE SEVEN
HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY

SECTION 701. Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders.

The Company will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee with respect to the Securities of each series:

(1) not more than 10 days after each record date with respect to the payment of interest, if any, a list, in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities of such series as of such record date, and

(2) at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing, within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished;

excluding from any such list names and addresses received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar.

SECTION 702. Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders.

The Trustee shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, the names and addresses of Holders contained in the most recent list furnished to the Trustee as provided in Section 701 and the names and addresses of Holders received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar. The Trustee may destroy any list furnished to it as provided in Section 701 upon receipt of a new list so furnished.

The rights of Holders to communicate with other Holders with respect to their rights under this Indenture or under the Securities, and the corresponding rights and privileges of the Trustee, shall be as provided by the Trust Indenture Act.

Every Holder of Securities, by receiving and holding the same, agrees with the Company and the Trustee that neither the Company nor the Trustee nor any agent of any of them shall be held accountable by reason of any disclosure of information as to names and addresses of Holders made pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act.

42

SECTION 703. Reports by Trustee.

The Trustee shall transmit to Holders such reports concerning the Trustee and its actions under this Indenture as may be required pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act at the times and in the manner provided pursuant thereto.

A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to Holders, be filed by the Trustee with each stock exchange upon which any Securities are listed, with the Commission and with the Company. The Company will notify the Trustee when any Securities are listed on any stock exchange.

SECTION 704. Reports by Company.

The Company shall file with the Trustee and the Commission, and transmit to Holders, such information, documents and other reports, and such summaries thereof, as may be required pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act at the times and in the manner provided pursuant to such Act; provided that any such information, documents or reports required to be filed with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act shall be filed with the Trustee within 15 days after the same is so required to be filed with the Commission.

ARTICLE EIGHT CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE, TRANSFER OR LEASE

SECTION 801. Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms.

The Company shall not, in a single transaction or a series of related transactions, consolidate with or merge into any other Person or permit any other Person to consolidate with or merge into the Company or transfer, convey, sell, lease or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of its assets, unless:

(1) in a transaction in which the Company does not survive or in which the Company transfers, conveys, sells, leases or otherwise disposes of all or substantially all of its assets, the successor entity (for purposes of this Article Eight, a "Successor Company") shall be a corporation, partnership, trust or other entity organized and validly existing under the laws of the United States of America, any State thereof or the District of Columbia, and shall expressly assume, by an indenture supplemental hereto, executed and delivered to the Trustee, in form satisfactory to the Trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of and any premium and interest on all the Securities and the performance or observance of every covenant of this Indenture on the part of the Company to be performed or observed;

(2) immediately after giving pro forma effect to such transaction and treating any indebtedness which becomes an obligation of the Company or any Subsidiary as a result of such transaction as having been incurred by the Company or such Subsidiary at the time of such transaction, no Event of Default, and no event which, after notice or lapse of time or both, would become an Event of Default, shall have happened and be continuing;

43

(3) if, as a result of any such consolidation or merger or such transfer, conveyance, sale, lease or other disposition, properties or assets of the Company would become subject to a mortgage, pledge, lien, security interest or other encumbrance which would not be permitted by this Indenture, the Company or the Successor Company, as the case may be, shall take such steps as shall be necessary effectively to secure the Securities equally and ratably with (or prior to) all indebtedness secured thereby;

(4) any other conditions provided pursuant to Section 301 with respect to the Securities of a series are satisfied; and

(5) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that such consolidation, merger, transfer, conveyance, sale, lease or other disposition and, if a supplemental indenture is required in connection with such transaction, such supplemental indenture comply with this Article and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

SECTION 802. [Intentionally Omitted]

SECTION 803. Successor Substituted.

Upon any consolidation of the Company with, or merger of the Company into, any other Person or any transfer, conveyance, sale, lease or other disposition of all or substantially all of the assets of the Company in accordance with Section 801, the Successor Company shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Company under this Indenture with the same effect as if such successor Person had been named as the Company herein, and thereafter, except in the case of a lease, the predecessor Person shall be relieved of all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities.

ARTICLE NINE
SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES

SECTION 901. Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders.

Without the consent of any Holders, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee, at any time and from time to time, may enter into one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in form satisfactory to the Trustee, for any of the following purposes:

- (1) to evidence the succession of another Person to the Company and the assumption by any such successor of the covenants of the Company herein and in the Securities; or
- (2) to add to the covenants of the Company for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such covenants are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such covenants are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series) or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company; or

44

(3) to add any additional Events of Default for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such additional Events of Default are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such additional Events of Default are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series); or

(4) to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture to such extent as shall be necessary to permit or facilitate the issuance of Securities in bearer form, registrable or not registrable as to principal, and with or without interest coupons, or to permit or facilitate the issuance of Securities in uncertificated form; or

(5) to add to, change or eliminate any of the provisions of this Indenture in respect of one or more series of Securities, provided that any such addition, change or elimination (A) shall neither (i) apply to any Security of any series created prior to the execution of such supplemental indenture and entitled to the benefit of such provision nor (ii) modify the rights of the Holder of any such Security with respect to such provision or (B) shall become effective only when there is no such Security Outstanding; or

(6) to secure the Securities; or

(7) to establish the form or terms of Securities of any series as permitted by Sections 201 and 301; or

(8) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, pursuant to the requirements of Section 611; or

(9) to cure any ambiguity, to correct or supplement any provision herein which may be defective or inconsistent with any other provision herein; or

(10) to make any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Indenture, provided that such action pursuant to clause (9) above shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of Securities of any series in any material respect.

SECTION 902. Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Holders.

With the consent of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of each series affected by such supplemental indenture, by Act of said Holders delivered to the Company and the Trustee, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee may enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series under this Indenture; provided, however, that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby:

(1) change the Stated Maturity of the principal of, or any installment of principal of or interest on, any Security, or reduce the principal amount thereof or the rate of interest thereon or any premium payable upon the redemption thereof, or reduce the amount of the principal of an Original Issue Discount Security or any other Security which would be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 502, or change any Place of Payment where, or the coin or currency in which, any Security or any premium or interest thereon is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after the Stated Maturity thereof (or, in the case of redemption, on or after the Redemption Date or in the case of an offer to purchase Securities which has been made pursuant to a covenant contained in this Indenture, on or after the applicable purchase date), or modify the provisions of this Indenture with respect to the subordination of the Securities in a manner adverse to the Holders; or

45

(2) reduce the percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, the consent of whose Holders is required for any such supplemental indenture, or the consent of whose Holders is required for any waiver (of compliance with certain provisions of this Indenture or certain

defaults hereunder and their consequences) provided for in this Indenture; or

(3) modify any of the provisions of this Section, Section 513 or Section 1009, except to increase any such percentage or to provide that certain other provisions of this Indenture cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby; provided, however, that this clause shall not be deemed to require the consent of any Holder with respect to changes in the references to “the Trustee” and concomitant changes in this Section and Section 1009, or the deletion of this proviso, in accordance with the requirements of Sections 611 and 901(8); or

(4) following the making of an offer to purchase Securities which has been made pursuant to a covenant contained in this Indenture, modify the provisions of this Indenture with respect to such offer to purchase in a manner adverse to such Holder.

A supplemental indenture which changes or eliminates any covenant or other provision of this Indenture which has expressly been included solely for the benefit of one or more particular series of Securities, or which modifies the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series with respect to such covenant or other provision, shall be deemed not to affect the rights under this Indenture of the Holders of Securities of any other series.

It shall not be necessary for any Act of Holders under this Section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such Act shall approve the substance thereof.

SECTION 903. Execution of Supplemental Indentures.

In executing, or accepting the additional trusts created by, any supplemental indenture permitted by this Article or the modifications thereby of the trusts created by this Indenture, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 601) shall be fully protected in

46

relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating that the execution of such supplemental indenture is authorized or permitted by this Indenture. The Trustee may, but shall not be obligated to, enter into any such supplemental indenture which affects the Trustee’s own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

SECTION 904. Effect of Supplemental Indentures.

Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture under this Article, this Indenture shall be modified in accordance therewith, and such supplemental indenture shall form a part of this Indenture for all purposes; and every Holder of Securities theretofore or thereafter authenticated and delivered hereunder shall be bound thereby.

SECTION 905. Conformity with Trust Indenture Act.

Every supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article shall conform to the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act.

SECTION 906. Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures.

Securities of any series authenticated and delivered after the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to this Article may, and shall if required by the Trustee, bear a notation in form approved by the Trustee as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities of any series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Trustee and the Company, to any such supplemental indenture may be prepared and executed by the Company, and such new Securities may be authenticated and delivered by the Trustee in exchange for Outstanding Securities of such series.

ARTICLE TEN COVENANTS

SECTION 1001. Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest.

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of each series of Securities that it will duly and punctually pay the principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities of that series in accordance with the terms of the Securities and this Indenture.

SECTION 1002. Maintenance of Office or Agency.

The Company will maintain in each Place of Payment for any series of Securities an office or agency where Securities of that series may be presented or surrendered for payment, where Securities of that series may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange and where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of that series and this Indenture may be served. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the location, and any change in the location, of such office or agency. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required office or agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee as its agent to receive all such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.

47

The Company may also from time to time designate one or more other offices or agencies where the Securities of one or more series may be presented or surrendered for any or all such purposes and may from time to time rescind such designations; provided, however, that no such designation or rescission shall in any manner relieve the Company of its obligation to maintain an office or agency in each Place of Payment for Securities of any series for such purposes. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of any such designation or rescission and of any change in the location of any such other office or agency.

SECTION 1003. Money for Securities Payments to Be Held in Trust.

If the Company shall at any time act as its own Paying Agent with respect to any series of Securities, it will, on or before each due date of the principal of or any premium or interest on any of the Securities of that series, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum sufficient to pay the principal and any premium and interest so becoming due until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided and will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

Whenever the Company shall have one or more Paying Agents for any series of Securities, it will, prior to 11:00 A.M., New York City time, on each due date of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of that series, deposit with a Paying Agent a sum sufficient to pay such amount, such sum to be held as provided by the Trust Indenture Act, and (unless such Paying Agent is the Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

The Company will cause each Paying Agent for any series of Securities other than the Trustee to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such Paying Agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section, that such Paying Agent will (1) comply with the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act applicable to it as a Paying Agent and (2) during the continuance of any default by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities of that series in the making of any payment in respect of the Securities of that series, upon the written request of the Trustee, forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums held in trust by such Paying Agent for payment in respect of the Securities of that series.

The Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, pay, or by Company Order direct any Paying Agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums held in trust by the Company or such Paying Agent, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same trusts as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such Paying Agent; and, upon such payment by any Paying Agent to the Trustee, such Paying Agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such money.

Any money deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent, or then held by the Company, in trust for the payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Security of any series and remaining unclaimed for two years after such principal, premium or interest has become due and payable shall be paid to the Company on Company Request, or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and the Holder of such Security shall thereafter, as an unsecured general creditor, look only to the Company for payment thereof, and all liability of the Trustee or such Paying Agent with respect to such trust money, and all

liability of the Company as trustee thereof, shall thereupon cease; provided, however, that the Trustee or such Paying Agent, before being required to make any such repayment, may at the expense of the Company cause to be published once, in a newspaper published in the English language, customarily published on each Business Day and of general circulation in The City of New York, New York, notice that such money remains unclaimed and that, after a date specified therein, which shall not be less than 30 days from the date of such publication, any unclaimed balance of such money then remaining will be repaid to the Company.

SECTION 1004. Statement by Officers as to Default.

(i) The Company will deliver to the Trustee, within 90 days after the end of each fiscal year of the Company ending after the date hereof, an Officers' Certificate, stating whether or not to the best knowledge of the signers thereof the Company is in default in the performance and observance of any of the terms, provisions and conditions of this Indenture (without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice provided hereunder) and, if the Company shall be in default, specifying all such defaults and the nature and status thereof of which they may have knowledge.

(ii) The Company shall deliver to the Trustee, as soon as possible and in any event within five days after the Company becomes aware or should reasonably become aware of the occurrence of an Event of Default or an event which, with notice or the lapse of time or both, would constitute an Event of Default, an Officers' Certificate setting forth the details of such Event of Default or default, and the action which the Company proposes to take with respect thereto.

SECTION 1005. Existence.

Subject to Article Eight, the Company will do or cause to be done all things necessary to preserve and keep in full force and effect the existence, rights (charter and statutory) and franchises of the Company; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to preserve any such right or franchise if it shall determine that the preservation thereof is no longer desirable in the conduct of the business of the Company and that the loss thereof is not disadvantageous in any material respect to the Holders.

SECTION 1006. Maintenance of Properties.

The Company will cause all properties used or useful in the conduct of its business or the business of any Subsidiary to be maintained and kept in good condition, repair and working order (reasonable wear and tear excepted) and supplied with all necessary equipment and will cause to be made all necessary repairs, renewals, replacements, betterments and improvements thereof, all as in the judgment of the Company may be necessary so that the business carried on in connection therewith may be properly and advantageously conducted at all times; provided, however, that nothing in this Section shall prevent the Company from discontinuing the

operation or maintenance of any of such properties if such discontinuance is, in the judgment of the Company, desirable in the conduct of its business or the business of any Subsidiary and not disadvantageous in any material respect to the Holders.

SECTION 1007. Payment of Taxes and Other Claims.

The Company will pay or discharge or cause to be paid or discharged, before the same shall become delinquent, (1) all taxes, assessments and governmental charges levied or imposed upon the Company or any Subsidiary or upon the income, profits or property of the Company or any Subsidiary, and

(2) all lawful claims for labor, materials and supplies which, if unpaid, might by law become a lien upon the property of the Company or any Subsidiary; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to pay or discharge or cause to be paid or discharged any such tax, assessment, charge or claim whose amount, applicability or validity is being contested in good faith by appropriate proceedings.

SECTION 1008. Maintenance of Insurance.

The Company shall, and shall cause its Subsidiaries to, keep at all times all of their properties which are of an insurable nature insured against loss or damage with insurers believed by the Company to be responsible to the extent that property of similar character is usually so insured by corporations similarly situated and owning like properties in accordance with good business practice.

SECTION 1009. Waiver of Certain Covenants.

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301 for Securities of such series, the Company may, with respect to the Securities of any series, omit in any particular instance to comply with any term, provision or condition set forth in any of Sections 1006 through 1008 or in any covenant provided pursuant to Section 301(20), 901(2) or 901(7) for the benefit of the Holders of such series if before the time for such compliance the Holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series shall, by Act of such Holders, either waive such compliance in such instance or generally waive compliance with such term, provision or condition, but no such waiver shall extend to or affect such term, provision or condition except to the extent so expressly waived, and, until such waiver shall become effective, the obligations of the Company and the duties of the Trustee in respect of any such term, provision or condition shall remain in full force and effect.

ARTICLE ELEVEN
REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES

SECTION 1101. Applicability of Article.

Securities of any series which are redeemable before their Stated Maturity shall be redeemable in accordance with their terms and (except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301 for such Securities) in accordance with this Article.

SECTION 1102. Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee.

The election of the Company to redeem any Securities shall be evidenced by a Board Resolution or in another manner specified as contemplated by Section 301 for such Securities. In case of any redemption at the election of the Company of less than all the Securities of any series (including any such redemption affecting only a single Security), the Company shall, at least five Business Days prior to giving notice of such redemption (unless a shorter notice shall be satisfactory to the Trustee), notify the Trustee of such Redemption Date, of the principal amount of Securities of such series to be redeemed and, if applicable, of the tenor of the Securities to be redeemed. In the case of any redemption of Securities prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, the Company shall furnish the Trustee with an Officers' Certificate evidencing compliance with such restriction.

SECTION 1103. Selection by Trustee of Securities to Be Redeemed.

If less than all the Securities of any series are to be redeemed (unless all the Securities of such series and of a specified tenor are to be redeemed or unless such redemption affects only a single Security), the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected by the Trustee, from the Outstanding Securities of such series not previously called for redemption, (i) in compliance with the requirements of the principal national securities exchange on which such Securities are listed, if such Securities are listed on any national securities exchange, and (ii) if such Securities are not so listed, on a pro rata basis, by lot or by such method as the Trustee shall deem fair and appropriate and which may provide for the selection for redemption of a portion of the principal amount of any Security of such series, provided that the unredeemed portion of the principal amount of any Security shall be in an authorized denomination (which shall not be less than the minimum authorized denomination) for such Security. If less than all the Securities of such series and of a specified tenor are to be redeemed (unless such redemption affects only a single Security), the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected by the Trustee, from the Outstanding Securities of such series and specified tenor not previously called for redemption in accordance with the preceding sentence.

The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company in writing of the Securities selected for redemption as aforesaid and, in case of any Securities selected for partial redemption as aforesaid, the principal amount thereof to be redeemed.

The provisions of the two preceding paragraphs shall not apply with respect to any redemption affecting only a single Security, whether such Security is to be redeemed in whole or in part. In the case of any such redemption in part, the unredeemed portion of the principal amount of the Security shall be in an authorized denomination (which shall not be less than the minimum authorized denomination) for such Security.

For all purposes of this Indenture, unless the context otherwise requires, all provisions relating to the redemption of Securities shall relate, in the case of any Securities redeemed or to be redeemed only in part, to the portion of the principal amount of such Securities which has been or is to be redeemed.

SECTION 1104. Notice of Redemption.

Notice of redemption shall be given by first-class mail, postage prepaid, mailed not less than 30 nor more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date, to each Holder of Securities to be redeemed, at his address appearing in the Security Register; provided, however, notice of redemption may be given more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date if the notice is issued in connection with a Defeasance pursuant to Section 1502 or a satisfaction and discharge pursuant to Article Four.

All notices of redemption shall state:

(1) the Redemption Date,

(2) the Redemption Price, if then determinable and otherwise the method of its determination,

(3) if less than all the Outstanding Securities of any series consisting of more than a single Security are to be redeemed, the identification (and, in the case of partial redemption of any such Securities, the principal amounts) of the particular Securities to be redeemed and, if less than all the Outstanding Securities of any series consisting of a single Security are to be redeemed, the principal amount of the particular Security to be redeemed,

(4) that on the Redemption Date the Redemption Price will become due and payable upon each such Security to be redeemed and, if applicable, that interest thereon will cease to accrue on and after said date,

(5) the place or places where each such Security is to be surrendered for payment of the Redemption Price, and

(6) that the redemption is for a sinking fund, if such is the case.

Notice of redemption of Securities to be redeemed at the election of the Company shall be given by the Company or, at the Company's request, by the Trustee in the name and at the expense of the Company and shall be irrevocable.

SECTION 1105. Deposit of Redemption Price.

Prior to 11:00 A.M., New York City time, on any Redemption Date, the Company shall deposit with the Trustee or with a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 1003) an amount of money sufficient to pay the Redemption Price of, and (except if the Redemption Date shall be an Interest Payment Date) accrued interest on, all the Securities which are to be redeemed on that date.

SECTION 1106. Securities Payable on Redemption Date.

Notice of redemption having been given as aforesaid, the Securities so to be redeemed shall, on the Redemption Date, become due and payable at the Redemption Price therein

specified, and from and after such date (unless the Company shall default in the payment of the Redemption Price and accrued interest) such Securities shall cease to bear interest. Upon surrender of any such Security for redemption in accordance with said notice, such Security shall be paid by the Company at the Redemption Price, together with accrued interest to the Redemption Date; provided, however, that, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301, installments of interest whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to the Redemption Date will be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, registered as such at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates according to their terms and the provisions of Section 307.

If any Security called for redemption shall not be so paid upon surrender thereof for redemption, the principal and any premium shall, until paid, bear interest from the Redemption Date at the rate prescribed therefor in the Security.

SECTION 1107. Securities Redeemed in Part.

Any Security which is to be redeemed only in part shall be surrendered at a Place of Payment therefor (with, if the Company or the Trustee so requires, due endorsement by, or a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Trustee duly executed by, the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing), and the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder of such Security without service charge, a new Security or Securities of the same series and of like tenor, of any authorized denomination as requested by such Holder, in aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the unredeemed portion of the principal of the Security so surrendered.

ARTICLE TWELVE SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES

SECTION 1201. Applicability of Article.

Unless otherwise provided with respect to the Securities of any series in or pursuant to the Board Resolution or supplemental indenture establishing such series of Securities pursuant to Section 301, the provisions of this Article shall be applicable to each series of Securities.

SECTION 1202. Securities Subordinate to Senior Debt.

The Company covenants and agrees, and each Holder of a Security, by his acceptance thereof, likewise covenants and agrees, that, to the extent and in the manner hereinafter set forth in this Article (subject to the provisions of Article Four and Article Fifteen), the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on each and all of the Securities of such series are hereby expressly made subordinate and subject in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all Senior Debt of the Company.

No provisions of this Article Twelve shall prevent the occurrence of any Event of Default.

SECTION 1203. Payment Over of Proceeds Upon Dissolution, Etc.

In the event of (a) any insolvency or bankruptcy case or proceeding, or any receivership, liquidation, reorganization or other similar case or proceeding in connection therewith, relative to the Company or to its creditors, as such, or to its assets, or (b) any liquidation, dissolution or other winding up of the Company, whether voluntary or involuntary and whether or not involving insolvency or bankruptcy, or (c) any assignment for the benefit of creditors or any other marshalling of assets and liabilities of the Company, then and in any such event specified in (a), (b) or (c) above (each such event, if any, herein sometimes referred to as a "Proceeding") the holders of Senior Debt of the Company shall be entitled to receive payment in full of all amounts due or to become due on or in respect of all Senior Debt of the Company, or provision shall be made for such payment in cash or cash equivalents or otherwise in a manner satisfactory to the holders of Senior Debt of the Company, before the Holders of the Securities are entitled to receive any payment or distribution of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities (including any payment or distribution which may be payable or deliverable by reason of the payment of any other indebtedness of the Company subordinated to the payment of the Securities, such payment or distribution being hereinafter referred to as a "Junior Subordinated Payment"), on account of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on the Securities or on account of any purchase or other acquisition of Securities by the Company or any Subsidiary of the Company (all such payments, distributions, purchases and acquisitions, other than the payment or distribution of stock or securities of the Company referred to in the second succeeding paragraph, herein referred to, individually and collectively, as a "Securities Payment"), and to that end the holders of Senior Debt of the Company shall be entitled to receive, for application to the payment thereof, any Securities Payment which may be payable or deliverable in respect of the Securities in any such Proceeding.

In the event that, notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section, the Trustee or the Holder of any Security shall have received any Securities Payment before all Senior Debt of the Company is paid in full or payment thereof provided for in cash or cash equivalents or otherwise in a manner satisfactory to the holders of Senior Debt of the Company, and if such fact shall, at or prior to the time of such Securities Payment, have been made known to the Trustee or, as the case may be, such Holder, then and in such event such Securities Payment shall be paid over or delivered forthwith to the trustee in bankruptcy, receiver, liquidating trustee, custodian, assignee, agent or other Person making payment or distribution of assets of the Company for application to the payment of all Senior Debt of the Company remaining unpaid, to the extent necessary to pay all Senior Debt of the Company in full, after giving effect to any concurrent payment or distribution to or for the holders of Senior Debt of the Company.

For purposes of this Article only, the words "any payment or distribution of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities" shall not be deemed to include a payment or distribution of stock or securities of the Company provided for by a plan of reorganization or readjustment authorized by an order or decree of a court of competent jurisdiction in a reorganization proceeding under any applicable bankruptcy law or of any other corporation provided for by such plan of reorganization or readjustment which stock or securities are subordinated in right of payment to all then outstanding Senior Debt of the Company to substantially the same extent as the Securities are so subordinated as provided in this Article. The consolidation of the Company with, or the merger of the Company into, another Person or the

liquidation or dissolution of the Company following the conveyance or transfer of all or substantially all of its assets to another Person upon the terms and conditions set forth in Article Eight shall not be deemed a Proceeding for the purposes of this Section if the Person formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or the Person which acquires by conveyance or transfer such assets, as the case may be, shall, as a part of such consolidation, merger, conveyance or transfer, comply with the conditions set forth in Article Eight.

SECTION 1204. No Payment When Senior Debt of the Company in Default.

In the event that any Senior Payment Default (as defined below) shall have occurred and be continuing, then no Securities Payment shall be made unless and until such Senior Payment Default shall have been cured or waived or shall have ceased to exist or all amounts then due and payable in respect of Senior Debt of the Company shall have been paid in full, or provision shall have been made for such payment in cash or cash equivalents or otherwise in a manner satisfactory to the holders of Senior Debt of the Company; provided, however, that nothing in this Section shall prevent the satisfaction of any sinking fund payment in accordance with Article Sixteen by delivering and crediting pursuant to Section 1602 Securities which have been acquired (upon redemption or otherwise) prior to such Senior Payment Default.

"Senior Payment Default" means any default in the payment of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Senior Debt of the Company when due, whether at the Stated Maturity of any such payment or by declaration of acceleration, call for redemption or otherwise.

In the event that any Senior Nonmonetary Default (as defined below) shall have occurred and be continuing, then, upon the receipt by the Company and the Trustee of written notice of such Senior Nonmonetary Default from the agent for the Designated Senior Debt which is the subject of such Senior Nonmonetary Default, no Securities Payment shall be made during the period (the "Payment Blockage Period") commencing on the date of such receipt of such written notice and ending on the earlier of (i) the date on which such Senior Nonmonetary Default shall have been cured or waived or shall have ceased to exist or all Designated Senior Debt the subject of such Senior Nonmonetary Default shall have been discharged; (ii) the 179th day after the date of such receipt of such written notice; or (iii) the date on which the Payment Blockage Period shall have been terminated by written notice to the Company or the Trustee from the agent for the Designated Senior Debt initiating the Payment Blockage Period; provided, however, that nothing in this Section shall prevent the satisfaction of any sinking fund payment in accordance with Article Sixteen by delivering and crediting pursuant to Section 1602 Securities which have been acquired (upon redemption or otherwise) prior to the date of such receipt of such written notice. No more than one Payment Blockage Period may be commenced with respect to the Securities of a particular series during any 360-day period and there shall be a period of at least 181 consecutive days in each 360-day period when no Payment Blockage Period is in effect. For all purposes of this paragraph, no Senior Nonmonetary Default that existed or was continuing on the date of commencement of any Payment Blockage Period shall be, or be made, the basis for the commencement of a subsequent Payment Blockage Period, whether or not within a period of 360 consecutive days, unless such Senior Nonmonetary Default shall have been cured for a period of not less than 90 consecutive days.

"Senior Nonmonetary Default" means the occurrence or existence and continuance of any event of default with respect to any Designated Senior Debt, other than a Senior Payment Default, permitting the holders of such Designated Senior Debt (or a trustee or agent on behalf of the holders thereof) to declare such Designated Senior Debt due and payable prior to the date on which it would otherwise become due and payable.

In the event that, notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company shall make any Securities Payment to the Trustee or any Holder prohibited by the foregoing provisions of this Section, and if such fact shall, at or prior to the time of such Securities Payment, have been made known to the Trustee or, as the

case may be, such Holder, then and in such event such Securities Payment shall be paid over and delivered forthwith to the Company.

The provisions of this Section shall not apply to any Securities Payment with respect to which Section 1203 would be applicable.

SECTION 1205. Payment Permitted If No Default.

Nothing contained in this Article or elsewhere in this Indenture or in any of the Securities shall prevent (a) the Company, at any time except during the pendency of any Proceeding referred to in Section 1203 or under the conditions described in Section 1204, from making Securities Payments, or (b) the application by the Trustee of any money deposited with it hereunder to Securities Payments or the retention of such Securities Payment by the Holders, if, at the time of such application by the Trustee, it did not have knowledge that such Securities Payment would have been prohibited by the provisions of this Article.

SECTION 1206. Subrogation to Rights of Holders of Senior Debt of the Company.

Subject to the payment in full of all amounts due or to become due on or in respect of Senior Debt of the Company, or the provision for such payment in cash or cash equivalents or otherwise in a manner satisfactory to the holders of Senior Debt of the Company, the Holders of the Securities shall be subrogated to the rights of the holders of such Senior Debt of the Company to receive payments and distributions of cash, property and securities applicable to the Senior Debt of the Company until the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Securities shall be paid in full. For purposes of such subrogation, no payments or distributions to the holders of the Senior Debt of the Company of any cash, property or securities to which the Holders of the Securities or the Trustee would be entitled except for the provisions of this Article, and no payments over pursuant to the provisions of this Article to the holders of Senior Debt of the Company by Holders of the Securities or the Trustee, shall, as among the Company, its creditors other than holders of Senior Debt of the Company and the Holders of the Securities, be deemed to be a payment or distribution by the Company to or on account of the Senior Debt of the Company.

SECTION 1207. Provisions Solely to Define Relative Rights.

The provisions of this Article are and are intended solely for the purpose of defining the relative rights of the Holders on the one hand and the holders of Senior Debt of the Company on the other hand. Nothing contained in this Article or elsewhere in this Indenture or in the Securities is intended to or shall (a) impair, as among the Company, its creditors other than

56

holders of Senior Debt of the Company and the Holders of the Securities, the obligation of the Company, which is absolute and unconditional (and which, subject to the rights under this Article of the holders of Senior Debt of the Company, is intended to rank equally with all other general obligations of the Company), to pay to the Holders of the Securities the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Securities as and when the same shall become due and payable in accordance with their terms; or (b) affect the relative rights against the Company of the Holders of the Securities and creditors of the Company other than the holders of Senior Debt of the Company; or (c) prevent the Trustee or the Holder of any Security from exercising all remedies otherwise permitted by applicable law upon default under this Indenture, subject to the rights, if any, under this Article of the holders of Senior Debt of the Company to receive cash, property and securities otherwise payable or deliverable to the Trustee or such Holder.

SECTION 1208. Trustee to Effectuate Subordination.

Each Holder of a Security by his acceptance thereof authorizes and directs the Trustee on his behalf to take such action as may be necessary or appropriate to effectuate the subordination provided in this Article and appoints the Trustee his attorney-in-fact for any and all such purposes.

SECTION 1209. No Waiver of Subordination Provisions.

No right of any present or future holder of any Senior Debt of the Company to enforce subordination as herein provided shall at any time in any way be prejudiced or impaired by any act or failure to act on the part of the Company or by any act or failure to act, in good faith, by any such holder, or by any noncompliance by the Company with the terms, provisions and covenants of this Indenture, regardless of any knowledge thereof any such holder may have or be otherwise charged with.

Without in any way limiting the generality of the foregoing paragraph, the holders of Senior Debt of the Company may, at any time and from time to time, without the consent of or notice to the Trustee or the Holders of the Securities, without incurring responsibility to the Holders of the Securities and without impairing or releasing the subordination provided in this Article or the obligations hereunder of the Holders of the Securities to the holders of Senior Debt of the Company, do any one or more of the following: (i) change the manner, place or terms of payment or extend the time of payment of, or renew or alter, Senior Debt of the Company, or otherwise amend or supplement in any manner Senior Debt of the Company or any instrument evidencing the same or any agreement under which Senior Debt of the Company is outstanding; (ii) sell, exchange, release or otherwise deal with any property pledged, mortgaged or otherwise securing Senior Debt of the Company; (iii) release any Person liable in any manner for the collection of Senior Debt of the Company; and (iv) exercise or refrain from exercising any rights against the Company and any other Person.

SECTION 1210. Notice to Trustee.

The Company shall give prompt written notice to the Trustee of any fact known to the Company which would prohibit the making of any payment to or by the Trustee in respect of the Securities. Notwithstanding the provisions of this Article or any other provision of this

57

Indenture, the Trustee shall not be charged with knowledge of the existence of any facts which would prohibit the making of any payment to or by the Trustee in respect of the Securities, unless and until the Trustee shall have received written notice thereof from the Company or a holder of Senior Debt of the Company or from any trustee therefor; and, prior to the receipt of any such written notice, the Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 601, shall be entitled in all respects to assume that no such facts exist; provided, however, that if the Trustee shall not have received the notice provided for in this Section at least three Business Days prior to the date upon which by the terms hereof any money may become payable for any purpose (including, without

limitation, the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on any Security), then, anything herein contained to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall have full power and authority to receive such money and to apply the same to the purpose for which such money was received and shall not be affected by any notice to the contrary which may be received by it within three Business Days prior to such date.

Subject to the provisions of Section 601, the Trustee shall be entitled to rely on the delivery to it of a written notice by a Person representing himself to be a holder of Senior Debt of the Company (or a trustee therefor) to establish that such notice has been given by a holder of Senior Debt of the Company (or a trustee therefor). In the event that the Trustee determines in good faith that further evidence is required with respect to the right of any Person as a holder of Senior Debt of the Company to participate in any payment or distribution pursuant to this Article, the Trustee may request such Person to furnish evidence to the reasonable satisfaction of the Trustee as to the amount of Senior Debt of the Company held by such Person, the extent to which such Person is entitled to participate in such payment or distribution and any other facts pertinent to the rights of such Person under this Article, and if such evidence is not furnished, the Trustee may defer any payment to such Person pending judicial determination as to the right of such Person to receive such payment.

SECTION 1211. Reliance on Judicial Order or Certificate of Liquidating Agent.

Upon any payment or distribution of assets of the Company referred to in this Article, the Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 601, and the Holders of the Securities shall be entitled to rely upon any order or decree entered by any court of competent jurisdiction in which such Proceeding is pending, or a certificate of the trustee in bankruptcy, receiver, liquidating trustee, custodian, assignee for the benefit of creditors, agent or other Person making such payment or distribution, delivered to the Trustee or to the Holders of Securities, for the purpose of ascertaining the Persons entitled to participate in such payment or distribution, the holders of the Senior Debt of the Company and other indebtedness of the Company, the amount thereof or payable thereon, the amount or amounts paid or distributed thereon and all other facts pertinent thereto or to this Article.

SECTION 1212. Trustee Not Fiduciary for Holders of Senior Debt of the Company.

The Trustee shall not be deemed to owe any fiduciary duty to the holders of Senior Debt of the Company and shall not be liable to any such holders if it shall in good faith mistakenly pay over or distribute to Holders of Securities or to the Company or to any other Person cash, property or securities to which any holders of Senior Debt of the Company shall be entitled by virtue of this Article or otherwise.

SECTION 1213. Rights of Trustee as Holder of Senior Debt of the Company; Preservation of Trustee's Rights.

The Trustee in its individual capacity shall be entitled to all the rights set forth in this Article with respect to any Senior Debt of the Company which may at any time be held by it, to the same extent as any other holder of Senior Debt of the Company, and nothing in this Indenture shall deprive the Trustee of any of its rights as such holder.

Nothing in this Article shall apply to claims of, or payments to, the Trustee under or pursuant to Section 607.

SECTION 1214. Article Applicable to Paying Agents.

In case at any time any Paying Agent other than the Trustee shall have been appointed by the Company and be then acting hereunder, the term "Trustee" as used in this Article shall in such case (unless the context otherwise requires) be construed as extending to and including such Paying Agent within its meaning as fully for all intents and purposes as if such Paying Agent were named in this Article in addition to or in place of the Trustee; provided, however, that Section 1213 shall not apply to the Company or any Affiliate of the Company if it or any Affiliate acts as Paying Agent.

SECTION 1215. Defeasance of this Article Twelve.

The subordination of the Securities of a series provided by this Article Twelve is expressly made subject to the provisions for Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance in Article Fifteen hereof and, anything herein to the contrary notwithstanding, upon the effectiveness of any such Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance, the Securities of such series then outstanding shall thereupon cease to be subordinated pursuant to this Article Twelve.

ARTICLE THIRTEEN
[INTENTIONALLY OMITTED]

ARTICLE FOURTEEN
[INTENTIONALLY OMITTED]

ARTICLE FIFTEEN
DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE

SECTION 1501. Company's Option to Effect Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.

The Company may elect, at its option at any time, to have Section 1502 or Section 1503 applied to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, designated pursuant to Section 301 as being defeasible pursuant to such Section 1502 or 1503, in accordance with any applicable requirements provided pursuant to Section 301 and upon compliance with the conditions set forth below in this Article. Any such election shall be evidenced in or pursuant to a Board Resolution or in another manner specified as contemplated by Section 301 for such Securities.

SECTION 1502. Defeasance and Discharge.

Upon the Company's exercise of its option (if any) to have this Section applied to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, the Company shall be deemed to have been discharged from its obligations, and the provisions of Article Twelve shall cease to be effective, with respect to such

Securities as provided in this Section on and after the date the conditions set forth in Section 1504 are satisfied (herein called "Defeasance"). For this purpose, such Defeasance means that the Company shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by such Securities and to have satisfied all its other obligations under such Securities and this Indenture insofar as such Securities are concerned (and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging the same), subject to the following which shall survive until otherwise terminated or discharged hereunder: (1) the rights of Holders of such Securities to receive, solely from the trust fund described in Section 1504 and as more fully set forth in such Section, payments in respect of the principal of and any premium and interest on such Securities when payments are due, (2) the Company's obligations with respect to such Securities under Sections 304, 305, 306, 1002 and 1003, (3) the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the Trustee hereunder and (4) this Article. Subject to compliance with this Article, the Company may exercise its option (if any) to have this Section applied to any Securities notwithstanding the prior exercise of its option (if any) to have Section 1503 applied to such Securities.

SECTION 1503. Covenant Defeasance.

Upon the Company's exercise of its option (if any) to have this Section applied to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, (1) the Company shall be released from its obligations under Section 801(3), Sections 1006 through 1008, inclusive, and any covenants provided pursuant to Section 301(20), 901(2) or 901(7) for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities, and (2) the occurrence of any event specified in Sections 501(5) (with respect to any of Section 801(3), Sections 1006 through 1008, inclusive, and any such covenants provided pursuant to Section 301(20), 901(2) or 901(7), 501(8) and 501(9) shall be deemed not to be or result in an Event of Default and (3) the provisions of Article Twelve shall cease to be effective, in each case with respect to such Securities as provided in this Section on and after the date the conditions set forth in Section 1504 are satisfied (herein called "Covenant Defeasance"). For this purpose, such Covenant Defeasance means that, with respect to such Securities, the Company may omit to comply with and shall have no liability in respect of any term, condition or limitation set forth in any such specified Section (to the extent so specified in the case of Section 501(5)) or Article Twelve, whether directly or indirectly by reason of any reference elsewhere herein to any such Section or Article or by reason of any reference in any such Section or Article to any other provision herein or in any other document, but the remainder of this Indenture and such Securities shall be unaffected thereby.

60

SECTION 1504. Conditions to Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.

The following shall be the conditions to the application of Section 1502 or Section 1503 to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be:

(1) The Company shall irrevocably have deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee (or another trustee which satisfies the requirements contemplated by Section 609 and agrees to comply with the provisions of this Article applicable to it) as trust funds in trust for the purpose of making the following payments, specifically pledged as security for, and dedicated solely to, the benefits of the Holders of such Securities, (A) money in an amount, or (B) U.S. Government Obligations which through the scheduled payment of principal and interest in respect thereof in accordance with their terms will provide, not later than one day before the due date of any payment, money in an amount, or (C) a combination thereof, in each case sufficient, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay and discharge, and which shall be applied by the Trustee (or any such other qualifying trustee) to pay and discharge, the principal of and any premium and interest on such Securities on the respective Stated Maturities, in accordance with the terms of this Indenture and such Securities. As used herein, "U.S. Government Obligation" means (x) any security which is (i) a direct obligation of the United States of America for the payment of which the full faith and credit of the United States of America is pledged or (ii) an obligation of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by the United States of America, which, in either case (i) or (ii), is not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof, and (y) any depository receipt issued by a bank (as defined in Section 3(a) (2) of the Securities Act) as custodian with respect to any U.S. Government Obligation which is specified in clause (x) above and held by such bank for the account of the holder of such depository receipt, or with respect to any specific payment of principal of or interest on any U.S. Government Obligation which is so specified and held, provided that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depository receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the U.S. Government Obligation or the specific payment of principal or interest evidenced by such depository receipt.

(2) In the event of an election to have Section 1502 apply to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel stating that (A) the Company has received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling or (B) since the date of this instrument, there has been a change in the applicable Federal income tax law, in either case (A) or (B) to the effect that, and based thereon such opinion shall confirm that, the Holders of such Securities will not recognize gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of the deposit, Defeasance and discharge to be effected with respect to such Securities and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amount, in the same manner and at the same times as would be the case if such deposit, Defeasance and discharge were not to occur.

(3) In the event of an election to have Section 1503 apply to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that the Holders of such Securities will not recognize gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of the deposit and Covenant Defeasance to be effected with respect to such Securities and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amount, in

61

the same manner and at the same times as would be the case if such deposit and Covenant Defeasance were not to occur.

(4) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate to the effect that neither such Securities nor any other Securities of the same series, if then listed on any securities exchange, will be delisted as a result of such deposit.

(5) No event which is, or after notice or lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default with respect to such Securities or any other Securities shall have occurred and be continuing at the time of such deposit or, with regard to any such event specified in Section 501(6), at any time on or prior to the 121st day after the date of such deposit (it being understood that this condition shall not be deemed satisfied until after such 121st day).

(6) Such Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance shall not cause the Trustee to have a conflicting interest within the meaning of the Trust Indenture Act (assuming all Securities are in default within the meaning of such Act).

(7) Such Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance shall not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, any other agreement or instrument to which the Company or any Subsidiary is a party or by which it is bound.

(8) At the time of such deposit, (A) no default in the payment of any principal of or premium or interest on any Senior Debt of the Company shall have occurred and be continuing, (B) no event of default with respect to any Senior Debt of the Company shall have resulted in such Senior Debt becoming, and continuing to be, due and payable prior to the date on which it would otherwise have become due and payable (unless payment of such Senior Debt has been made or duly provided for), and (C) no other event of default with respect to any Senior Debt of the Company shall have occurred and be continuing permitting (after notice or lapse of time or both) the holders of such Senior Debt (or a trustee on behalf of such holders) to declare such Senior Debt due and payable prior to the date on which it would otherwise have become due and payable.

(9) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that such deposit shall not cause either the Trustee or the trust so created to be subject to the Investment Company Act of 1940.

(10) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent with respect to such Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance have been complied with.

SECTION 1505. Deposited Money and U.S. Government Obligations to Be Held in Trust; Miscellaneous Provisions.

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 1003, all money and U.S. Government Obligations (including the proceeds thereof) deposited with the Trustee or other qualifying trustee (solely for purposes of this Section and Section 1506, the Trustee and any such

62

other trustee are referred to collectively as the "Trustee") pursuant to Section 1504 in respect of any Securities shall be held in trust and applied by the Trustee, in accordance with the provisions of such Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any such Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Holders of such Securities, of all sums due and to become due thereon in respect of principal and any premium and interest, but money so held in trust need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. Money and U.S. Government Obligations so held in trust shall not be subject to the provisions of Article Twelve.

The Company shall pay and indemnify the Trustee against any tax, fee or other charge imposed on or assessed against the U.S. Government Obligations deposited pursuant to Section 1504 or the principal and interest received in respect thereof other than any such tax, fee or other charge which by law is for the account of the Holders of Outstanding Securities.

Anything in this Article to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall deliver or pay to the Company from time to time upon Company Request any money or U.S. Government Obligations held by it as provided in Section 1504 with respect to any Securities which, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, are in excess of the amount thereof which would then be required to be deposited to effect the Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance, as the case may be, with respect to such Securities.

SECTION 1506. Reinstatement.

If the Trustee or the Paying Agent is unable to apply any money in accordance with this Article with respect to any Securities by reason of any order or judgment of any court or governmental authority enjoining, restraining or otherwise prohibiting such application, then the obligations under this Indenture and such Securities from which the Company has been discharged or released pursuant to Section 1502 or 1503 shall be revived and reinstated as though no deposit had occurred pursuant to this Article with respect to such Securities, until such time as the Trustee or Paying Agent is permitted to apply all money held in trust pursuant to Section 1505 with respect to such Securities in accordance with this Article; provided, however, that if the Company makes any payment of principal of or any premium or interest on any such Security following such reinstatement of its obligations, the Company shall be subrogated to the rights (if any) of the Holders of such Securities to receive such payment from the money so held in trust.

ARTICLE SIXTEEN SINKING FUNDS

SECTION 1601. Applicability of Article.

The provisions of this Article shall be applicable to any sinking fund for the retirement of Securities of any series except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301 for such Securities.

The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of any Securities is herein referred to as a "mandatory sinking fund payment", and any payment in excess of such minimum amount provided for by the terms of such Securities is herein referred to as an "optional sinking fund payment."

63

If provided for by the terms of any Securities, the cash amount of any sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in Section 1602. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities as provided for by the terms of such Securities.

SECTION 1602. Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities.

The Company (1) may deliver Outstanding Securities of a series (other than any previously called for redemption) and (2) may apply as a credit Securities of a series which have been redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Securities or through the application of

permitted optional sinking fund payments pursuant to the terms of such Securities, in each case in satisfaction of all or any part of any sinking fund payment with respect to any Securities of such series required to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities as and to the extent provided for by the terms of such Securities; provided, however, that the Securities to be so credited have not been previously so credited. The Securities to be so credited shall be received and credited for such purpose by the Trustee at the Redemption Price, as specified in the Securities so to be redeemed, for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly.

SECTION 1603. Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund.

Not less than 35 days prior to each sinking fund payment date for any Securities, the Company will deliver to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing sinking fund payment for such Securities pursuant to the terms of such Securities, the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by payment of cash and the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting Securities pursuant to Section 1602 and will also deliver to the Trustee any Securities to be so delivered. Not less than 32 days prior to each such sinking fund payment date, the Trustee shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in Section 1103 and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in Section 1104. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in Sections 1106 and 1107.

This instrument may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed, all as of the day and year first above written.

ISSUER:

Evolution Petroleum Corporation

By: _____
Name:
Title:

TRUSTEE:

_____,
as Trustee

By: _____
Name:
Title:

[Adams & Reese, LLP Letterhead]

July 14, 2010

Evolution Petroleum Corporation
2500 City West Blvd., Suite 1300
Houston, Texas 77042

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as counsel for Evolution Petroleum Corporation., a Nevada corporation (the "Company"), in connection with the preparation of the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-3 (the "Registration Statement") filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Commission") on the date hereof under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), relating to the offer and sale, from time to time, pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act, of (i) shares of common stock, par value \$0.001 ("Common Stock"), of the Company (including attached preferred share purchase rights), (ii) shares of preferred stock, par value \$0.001, of the Company (the "Preferred Stock"), (iii) warrants for the purchase of Common Stock (the "Securities Warrants"), and (iv) unsecured debt securities of the Company, which may be either senior or subordinated and may be issued in one or more series, consisting of notes, debentures or other evidences of indebtedness ("Debt Securities" and together with the Securities Warrants, Preferred Stock and the Common Stock, the "Securities").

We have examined originals or copies, certified or otherwise identified to our satisfaction, of (i) the Articles of Incorporation of the Company, as amended to date (the "Certificate of Incorporation"), (ii) the Bylaws of the Company, as amended to date (the "Bylaws"), (iii) the Registration Statement and all exhibits thereto, (iv) the form of senior indenture (the "Senior Indenture") filed or incorporated by reference as an exhibit to the Registration Statement, (v) the form of subordinated indenture (the "Subordinated Indenture" and, together with the Senior Indenture, the "Indentures") filed or incorporated by reference as an exhibit to the Registration Statement (vi) the minutes and records of the corporate proceedings of the Company with respect to the filing of the Registration Statement, (vii) the specimen Common Stock certificate, and (viii) such other certificates, statutes and other instruments and documents as we considered appropriate for purposes of the opinions hereafter expressed.

In making the foregoing examinations, we have assumed the genuineness of all signatures, the authenticity of all documents submitted to us as originals, the conformity to original documents submitted to us as certified, conformed or photostatic copies thereof and the authenticity of the originals of such latter documents.

As to various questions of fact material to the opinions expressed below, we have, without independent third party verification of their accuracy, relied in part, and to the extent we deemed reasonably necessary or appropriate, upon the representations and warranties of the Company contained in such documents, records, certificates, instruments or representations furnished or made available to us by the Company.

In connection with rendering the opinions set forth below, we have assumed that (i) all information contained in all documents reviewed by us is true and correct; (ii) all signatures on all documents examined by us are genuine; (iii) all documents submitted to us as originals are authentic and all documents submitted to us as copies conform to the originals of those documents; (iv) the Registration Statement and any subsequent amendments (including additional post-effective amendments), will have become effective and comply with all applicable laws; (v) all Securities will be issued and sold in compliance with applicable federal and state securities laws and in the manner specified in the Registration Statement and the applicable Prospectus Supplement; (vi) the applicable Indenture and, if applicable, the related Guarantees will have been duly qualified under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended; (vii) one or more prospectus supplements to the prospectus contained in the Registration Statement will have been prepared and filed with the Commission describing the Securities offered thereby; (viii) the Indentures, and any supplemental indenture relating to a particular series of Debt Securities, will be duly authorized, executed and delivered by the parties thereto in substantially the form reviewed by us; (ix) a definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement with respect to any Securities offered will have been duly authorized and validly executed and delivered by the Company and the other parties thereto; and (x) any securities issuable upon conversion, exchange or exercise of any Preferred Stock or Debt Securities being offered will have been duly authorized, created and, if appropriate, reserved for issuance upon such conversion, exchange or exercise.

Based on the foregoing, and subject to the assumptions, qualifications, limitations, and exceptions set forth herein and having due regard for such legal considerations we deem relevant, we are of the opinion that:

1. With respect to shares of Common Stock, when both (a) the board of directors (the "Board") of the Company has taken all necessary corporate action to approve the issuance of and the terms of the offering of the shares of Common Stock and related matters and (b) certificates representing the shares of Common Stock have been duly executed, countersigned, registered, and delivered either (i) in accordance with the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting, or similar agreement approved by the Board or such officers upon payment of the consideration therefor (not less than the par value of the Common Stock) provided for therein or (ii) upon conversion or exercise of any other Security, in accordance with the terms of such Security or the instrument governing such Security providing for such conversion or exercise as approved by the Board, for the consideration approved by the Board (not less than the par value of the

Common Stock), then the shares of Common Stock will be legally issued, fully paid, and nonassessable;

2. With respect to the Preferred Stock, (a) when the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to approve the issuance and terms of the Preferred Stock, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, including the adoption of a Certificate of Designation relating to the Preferred Stock and the filing of the Certificate of Designation with the Secretary of State of the State of Nevada, and (b) upon payment of the consideration therefor provided for in the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, the Preferred Stock will be legally issued;

3. With respect to the Securities Warrants, when (a) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to approve the creation of and the issuance and terms of the Securities Warrants, the terms of the offering thereof, and related matters, (b) the agreements relating to the Securities Warrants have been duly authorized and validly executed and delivered by the Company and the Warrant Agent appointed by the Company, and (c) the Securities Warrants or certificates representing the Securities Warrants have been duly executed, countersigned, registered, and delivered in accordance with the appropriate

agreements relating to the Securities Warrants and the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting, or similar agreement approved by the Board or such officers upon payment of the consideration therefor provided for therein, the Securities Warrants will be legally issued; and

4. When (i) the Board (or a committee thereof) has taken all necessary corporate action to approve the issuance and terms of any such Debt Securities; (ii) the terms of such Debt Securities and of their issuance and sale have been duly established in conformity with the applicable Indenture so as not to violate any applicable law or result in a default under or breach of any agreement or instrument binding upon the Company and so as to comply with any requirements or restrictions imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company; and (iii) such Debt Securities have been duly executed and authenticated in accordance with the applicable Indenture and issued and sold as contemplated in the Registration Statement and upon payment of the consideration for such Debt Securities as provided for in the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, such Debt Securities will be legally issued and such Debt Securities will constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms, except as such enforcement is subject to any applicable bankruptcy, insolvency (including, without limitation, all laws relating to fraudulent transfers), reorganization, moratorium and similar laws relating to or affecting creditors' rights generally and to general equitable principles (regardless of whether enforcement is sought in a proceeding in equity or at law).

The opinions expressed herein are limited to the federal securities law of the United States of America, the Nevada Corporation Statutes ("NCS"), and applicable provisions of the Nevada Constitution, in each case as currently in effect, and judicial decisions reported as of the date hereof and interpreting the NCS and such applicable provisions of the Nevada Constitution. We are expressing no opinion as to the effect of the laws of any other jurisdiction, domestic or foreign.

This opinion (i) is rendered in connection with the filing of the Registration Statement, (ii) is rendered as of the date hereof, and we undertake no, and hereby disclaim any kind of, obligation to advise you of any change or any new developments that might affect any matters or opinions set forth herein, and (iii) is limited to the matters stated herein and no opinions may be inferred or implied beyond the matters expressly stated herein

We hereby consent to the filing of this opinion as an exhibit to the Registration Statement and to the use of our Firm's name in the Registration Statement. In giving this consent, we do not admit that we are within the category of persons whose consent is required under Section 7 of the Securities Act and the rules and regulations thereunder.

Very truly yours,

/s/ ADAMS AND REESE LLP

Adams and Reese LLP

EVOLUTION PETROLEUM CORPORATION AND SUBSIDIARIES
COMPUTATION OF RATIOS OF EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES AND
EARNINGS (LOSS) TO COMBINED FIXED CHARGES AND PREFERRED STOCK
DIVIDENDS

(In thousands, except ratios)

RATIOS OF EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES AND TO COMBINED FIXED CHARGES AND
PREFERRED STOCK DIVIDENDS

Our ratios of earnings to fixed charges and our ratios of earnings to combined fixed charges and tax-adjusted preferred stock dividends were as follows for the periods indicated in the table below. See Exhibit 12 for explanation of the calculations and key terms.

| (Dollar amounts in thousands) | Nine Months Ended March 31, 2010 | Year ended June 30, | | | | |
|--|--|---------------------|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| | | 2009 | 2008 | 2007 | 2006 | 2005 |
| Earnings (loss) from continuing operations, pre-tax and before fixed charges | \$ (2,884) | \$ (3,618) | \$ (2,656) | \$ (2,449) | \$ 40,706 | \$ (2165) |
| Fixed Charges | \$ 38 | \$ 50 | \$ 47 | \$ 27 | \$ 2,615 | \$ 402 |
| Tax-adjusted Preferred Stock Dividends | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — |
| Ratio of Earnings to Fixed Charges | | | | | 17 | |
| Fixed charges coverage deficiency | \$ 38 | \$ 50 | \$ 47 | \$ 27 | | \$ 402 |
| Ratio of Earnings to Combined Fixed Charges and Tax-adjusted Preferred Stock Dividends | | | | | 17 | |
| Combined coverage deficiency | \$ 38 | \$ 50 | \$ 47 | \$ 27 | | \$ 402 |

Our ratios of earnings to fixed charges and our ratios of earnings to combined fixed charges and tax-adjusted preferred stock dividends were computed based on the following components:

Earnings. For the ratio calculations, “Earnings (loss) from continuing operations, pre-tax and before fixed charges” refers to consolidated income (loss) from continuing operations before income taxes and excluding fixed charges. The following customary other adjustments were all zero for the reporting periods: additions of (a) minority interests in consolidated subsidiaries or income or loss from equity investees, (b) amortization of capitalized interest, (c) distributed income of equity investees, and (d) share of pre-tax losses of equity investees for which charges arising from guarantees are included in fixed charges, and subtractions of (a) interest capitalized, (b) preference security dividend requirements of consolidated subsidiaries, and (c) the minority interest in pre-tax income of subsidiaries that have not incurred fixed charges.

Fixed charges. The term “fixed charges” means in our case the estimated interest factor in rental expense of leasing office space, plus interest expensed. The following other customary components of fixed charge were zero for the reporting periods: (a) interest capitalized, (b) amortized premiums, discounts and capitalized expenses related to indebtedness, and (c) preference security dividend requirements of consolidated subsidiaries.

Tax-adjusted Preferred Stock Dividends. The term “Tax-adjusted Preferred Stock Dividends” is the amount of pre-tax earnings required to pay the dividends on outstanding preference securities. We have not issued preference securities for the reporting periods presented.

The term “fixed charges coverage deficiency” refers to the amount of fixed charges for the year in excess of that year’s Earnings from continuing operations, pre-tax and before fixed charges (See the discussion of Earnings above). If such Earnings are zero or negative (i.e., a Loss), then the deficiency equals the year’s total fixed charges.

Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

We consent to the reference to our firm under the caption "Experts" in the Registration Statement (Form S-3) and related Prospectus of Evolution Petroleum Corporation for the registration of up to \$50,000,000 of securities and to the incorporation by reference therein of our report dated September 23, 2009, with respect to the financial statements of Evolution Petroleum Corporation, included in its Annual Report (Form 10-K) for the year ended June 30, 2009, filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

/s/ Hein & Associates LLP

Houston, Texas
July 14, 2010

CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT PETROLEUM ENGINEERS AND GEOLOGISTS

As independent consultants, W.D. Von Gonten & Co. hereby consents to the incorporation by reference in the Form S-3 of Evolution Petroleum Corporation to be filed on or about July 12, 2010, and as referenced in the Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended June 30, 2009 of Evolution Petroleum Corporation. filed on September 25, 2009, of information from our reserves report with respect to the reserves of Evolution Petroleum Corporation "as of July 1, 2005 through July 1, 2009." We also consent to the reference to us under the heading "Experts" in such Registration Statement.

Yours truly,

/s/ William D. Von Gonten, Jr.

W.D. VON GONTEN & CO.

By: William D. Von Gonten, Jr.

TX #73244

Its: President

July 12, 2010
